ThaiPod101.com

ThaiPod101.com

CLICK HERE to get our Thai Learning System! Get your **Free Lifetime Account**!

TRAVEL TO THAILAND
Conversation Cheat Sheet

Create Your FREE Account

CLICK

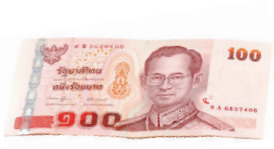
MONEY & SHOPPING

Is there an ATM nearby?
mii dtûu ee-thii-em thăaeo níi măi
มีตู้เอทีเอ็มแถวนี้ไหม

How much is ~?
thâo rài ~?
เท่าไหร่...

one thousand baht
nùeng-phan bàat
หนึ่งพันบาท

five hundred baht
hâa-ráauy bàat
ห้าร้อยบาท



hundred baht
ráauy bàat
ร้อยบาท

fifty baht
hâa-sìp bàat
ห้าสิบบาท

twenty baht
yîi-sìp bàat
ยี่สิบบาท

ten baht
sìp bàat
สิบบาท

five baht
hâa bàat
ห้าบาท

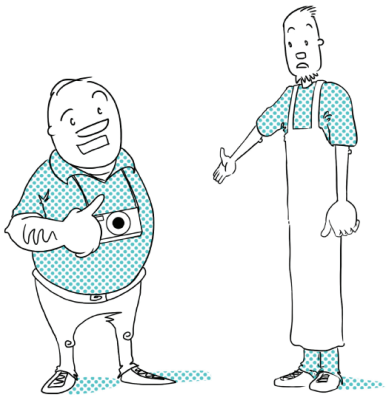
two baht
săawng bàat
สองบาท

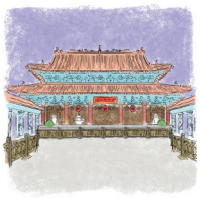
one baht
nùeng bàat
หนึ่งบาท

AROUND TOWN

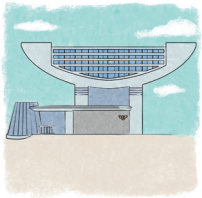
Where is ~?
...yùu thîi năi
...อยู่ที่ไหน

I'd like to go to ~.
chăn yàak bpai...
ฉันอยากไป...



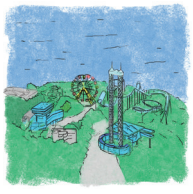


Chiang Mai
chiiang-mài
เชียงใหม่



Phuket
phuu-gèt
ภูเก็ต

Ayuthaya
a-yút-thá-yaa
อยุธยา



Ko Phi Phi Island
gàaw phii phii
เกาะพีพี

Wat Pho
wát phoo
วัดโพธิ์

The Floating Market
dtà-làat náam
ตลาดน้ำ

SURVIVAL PHRASES

Please take me to ~.
gà-rú-naa phaa chăn bpai thîi...
กรุณาพาฉันไปที่...

Where is the station?
sà-thăa-nii yùu thîi năi
สถานีอยู่ที่ไหน

Where is the restroom?
hâawng-náam yùu thîi năi
ห้องน้ำอยู่ที่ไหน

COMMUNICATION

Hello.
sà-wàt-dii
สวัสดี

Excuse me.
khăaw-thôot
ขอโทษ

I'm sorry.
chăn khăaw-thôot
ฉันขอโทษ

Nice to meet you.
yin dii thîi dâi rúu jàk
ยินดีที่ได้รู้จัก

Please.
gà-rú-naa
กรุณา

Yes.
chái
ใช่

I am ~.
chăn...
ฉัน...

Thank you.
khàawp-khun
ขอบคุณ

No.
mâi
ไม่

ASKING QUESTIONS

Do you understand?
khun khâo jai măi
คุณเข้าใจไหม

I understand.
khâo jai
เข้าใจ

I don't understand.
mâi khâo jai
ไม่เข้าใจ

Do you speak English?
khun phûut phaa-săa ang-grìt dâi măi
คุณพูดภาษาอังกฤษได้ไหม

Yes, I do.
chái chăn phûut dâi
ใช่ ฉันพูดได้

No, I don't.
mâi chăn phûut mâi dâi
ไม่ ฉันพูดไม่ได้

Can you eat this?
khun gin an níi dâi măi
คุณกินอันนี้ได้ไหม

Of course.
nâae naawn
แน่นอน

No, I can't eat it.
mâi chăn gin mâi dâi
ไม่ ฉันกินไม่ได้

ORDERING FOOD

Thai Green Curry
gaaeng khĭiao wăan
แกงเขียวหวาน

Som Tam
sôm dtam
ส้มตำ

Pad Thai
phàt thai
ผัดไทย

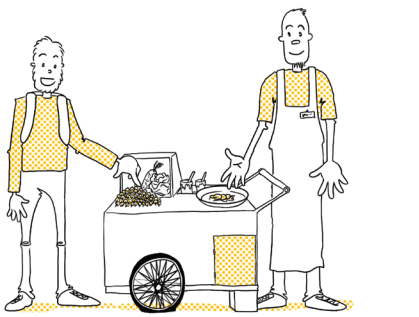
Nam Prik
nám phrík
น้ำพริก

Tom Yum Kung
dtôm yam gûng
ต้มยำกุ้ง

Kanom Mo Kaeng
khà-nŏm mâaw gaaeng
ขนมหม้อแกง

Roti Sai Mai
roo-dtii săai măi
โรตีสายไหม

clear soup
gaaeng jùuet
แกงจืด



COUNTERS

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
nùeng	săawng	săam	sìi	hâa	hòk	jèt	bpàaet	gâo	sìp
หนึ่ง	สอง	สาม	สี่	ห้า	หก	เจ็ด	แปด	เก้า	สิบ

FAMILY & RELATIVES
Conversation Cheat Sheet

FAMILY RELATIONS

What kind of person is your ~?
...khăawng khun bpen khon bàaep năi
...ของคุณเป็นคนแบบ

grandmother
yaai
ยาย

grandfather
dtaa
ตา

uncle
lung
ลุง

cousin
lûuk phîi lûuk náawng
ลูกพี่ ลูกน้อง

aunt
bpâa ; náa
ป้า ; น้า

me
chăn
ฉัน

father
phâaw
พ่อ

mother
mâae
แม่

young sister
náawng săao
น้องสาว

older sister
phîi săao
พี่สาว

older brother
phîi chaai
พี่ชาย

younger brother
náawng chaai
น้องชาย

How's your mother?
khun-mâae khăawng khun bpen yàang rai bâang
คุณแม่ของคุณเป็นอย่างไรบ้าง

My mother is well.
khun-mâae khăawng phŏm sà-baai-dii khráp
คุณแม่ของผมสบายดีครับ

FAMILY RELATIONS

husband
săa-mii
สามี

wife
phan-rá-yaa
ภรรยา

son
lûuk chaai
ลูกชาย

daughter
lûuk săao
ลูกสาว

Forward my greetings to your ~.
fàak sà-wàt-dii...khăawng khun dûuai
ฝากสวัสดี...ของคุณด้วย

PETS

I have a ~.
chăn mii...
ฉันมี...

dog	cat	bird	fish	bunny	snake
sù-nák	maaew	nók	bplaa	grà dtàai	nguu
สุนัข	แมว	นก	ปลา	กระต่าย	งู

FIRST MEETING

Nice to meet you.
yin dii thîi dâi rúu jàk
ยินดีที่ได้รู้จัก

What's your name?
khun chûue a-rai
คุณชื่ออะไร

How are you?
khun sà-baai dii măi
คุณสบายดีไหม

I've heard a lot about you.
chăn dâi fang rûueang gìiao-gàp khun bàwy mâak
ฉันได้ฟังเรื่องเกี่ยวกับคุณบ่อยมาก

Where are you from?
khun mii maa jàak thîi năi
คุณมาจากที่ไหน

I'm from Bangkok.
chăn maa jàak grung thêep
ฉันมาจากกรุงเทพฯ

This is for you.
nîi săm-ràp khun
นี่สำหรับคุณ

How many people are there in your family?
khrâawp khruua khăawng khun mii sà-maa-chík gìi khon
ครอบครัวของคุณมีสมาชิกกี่คน

Can I sit here?
khăaw nâng dtrong níi dâi măi
ขอนั่งตรงนี้ได้ไหม

What is this?
nîi khuue a-rai
นี่คืออะไร

How long will you stay?
khun jà pák thîi nîi naan khâae năi
คุณจะพักที่นี่นานแค่ไหน

It was nice to meet you.
dii jai thîi dâi phóp khun
ดีใจที่ได้พบคุณ

HOLIDAYS AND OBSERVANCES

What do you do on ~?
khun tham a-rai nai...
คุณทำอะไรใน...

When is ~?
...mûuea-rài
...เมื่อไหร่

Please tell me more about ~.
gà-rú-naa bàawk chăn phôoem dtooem gìiao-gàp...
กรุณาบอกฉันเพิ่มเติมเกี่ยวกับ...

Lunar New Year
dtrùt-jiin
ตรุษจีน

Magha Puja Day
wan maa-khá-buu-chaa
วันมาฆบูชา

Songkran Day
thêet-sà-gaan sŏng-graan
เทศกาลสงกรานต์

Coronation Day
wan chàt-mong-khon
วันฉัตรมงคล

Royal Ploughing Ceremony
wan phûuet-mong-khon
วันพืชมงคล

Asalha Puja Day
wan aa-săan-hà-buu-chaa
วันอาสาฬหบูชา

Loy Krathong Day
laauy grà-thong
ลอยกระทง

Constitution Day
wan rát-thà-tham-má-nuun
วันรัฐธรรมนูญ

CELEBRATIONS

Happy birthday!
sùk-săn wan-gòoet!
สุขสันต์วันเกิด!

Congratulations!
yin-dii dûuai!
ยินดีด้วย!

April fools!
goo-hòk!
โกหก!

Happy Halloween!
sùk-săn wan haa-loo-wiin!
สุขสันต์วันฮาโลวีน!

Merry Christmas!
mooe-rîi khrít-mâat!
เมอร์รี่คริสต์มาส!

Happy New Year!
sùk-săn wan bpii mài!
สุขสันต์วันปีใหม่!

ThaiPod101.com

CLICK HERE to get our Thai Learning System! Get your **Free Lifetime Account!**

DINING LIKE A CHAMP

Conversation Cheat Sheet

Create Your FREE Account

CLICK

Phrases You Need to Know at the Dining Table ›››

I have a reservation at nine.
chăn jaawng wái dtaawn gâo moong
ฉันจองไว้ตอนเก้าโมง

Do you have a table for two?
mii dtó săm-ràp săawng khon măi khá/khráp
มีโต๊ะสำหรับ 2 คนไหมคะ/ครับ

May I have a menu?
khăaw mee-nuu dâi măi khá/khráp
ขอเมนูได้ไหมคะ/ครับ

May I order?
sàng aa-hăan dûuai khâ/khráp
สั่งอาหารด้วยค่ะ/ครับ

What do you recommend?
mii mee-nuu náe nam măi khá/khráp
มีเมนูแนะนำไหมคะ/ครับ

I'll have this, please.
ao an níi khâ/khráp
เอาอันนี้ค่ะ/ครับ

Excuse me.
khăaw-thôot khâ/khráp
ขอโทษค่ะ/ครับ

My order hasn't come yet.
yang mâi dâi mee-nuu thîi sàng bpai looei khâ/khráp
ยังไม่ได้เมนูที่สั่งไปเลยค่ะ/ครับ

Check, please.
khít ngooen dûuai khâ/khráp
คิดเงินด้วยค่ะ/ครับ

Top Words You'll Need at the Restaurant ›››

POINT & SPEAK
chíi láe phûut
ชี้และพูด

~ please.
ao~khâ/khráp
เอา~ค่ะ/ครับ

appetizer
aa-hăan-rîiak-nám-yâauy
อาหารเรียกน้ำย่อย

main dish
aa-hăan jaan làk
อาหารจานหลัก

dessert
khà-nŏm wăan
ขนมหวาน

chicken
gài
ไก่

beef
núuea-wuua
เนื้อวัว

pork
núuea-mŭu
เนื้อหมู

salad
sà-làt
สลัด

seafood
aa-hăan thá-lee
อาหารทะเล

What are today's specials?
mee-nuu phí-sèet khăawng wan-níi khuue a-rai
เมนูพิเศษของวันนี้คืออะไร

Can I have a drink menu?
khăaw mee-nuu khrûueang dùuem dûuai khâ/khráp
ขอเมนูเครื่องดื่มด้วยค่ะ/ครับ

Can I have some more ~?
khăaw~phôoem dâi măi khá/khráp
ขอ~เพิ่มได้ไหมคะ/ครับ

Counters

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
nùeng	săawng	săam	sìi	hâa	hòk	jèt	bpàaet	gâo	sìp
หนึ่ง	สอง	สาม	สี่	ห้า	หก	เจ็ด	แปด	เก้า	สิบ

How to Choose The Best Foods to Fit Your Preferences

With ~, please.
ao~khâ/khráp
เอา~ค่ะ/ครับ

Without ~, please.
mâi ao~khâ/khráp
ไม่เอา~ค่ะ/ครับ

meat	fish	vegetables	butter	sugar	olive oil
núuea เนื้อ	bplaa ปลา	phàk ผัก	nooei เนย	nám-dtaan น้ำตาล	nám-man má-gàawk น้ำมันมะกอก

bell pepper	onions	wine	cheese	tomato	alcohol
phrík yùuak พริกหยวก	hŭua-hăawm หัวหอม	waai ไวน์	chíit ชีส	má-khŭuea-thêet มะเขือเทศ	lâo เหล้า

Does this dish contains any ~?
mee-nuu níi sài ~ măi khá/khráp
เมนูนี้ใส่~ไหมคะ/ครับ

I can't eat/drink ~.
chăn gin/dùuem~măi dâi
ฉันกิน/ดื่ม~ไม่ได้

Please remove ~ from this dish.
mâi sài~nai mee-nuu níi ná khá/khráp
ไม่ใส่~ในเมนูนี้นะคะ/ครับ

Table Request In The Restaurant

Can you bring me (a) ~?
khăaw~dûuai khâ/khráp
ขอ~ด้วยค่ะ/ครับ

I need (a) ~.
chăn dtâawng-gaan~
ฉันต้องการ~

spoon	fork	knife	napkin	salt	black pepper
cháawn ช้อน	sâawm ส้อม	mîit มีด	phâa gan bpûuean ผ้ากันเปื้อน	gluuea เกลือ	phrík thai dam พริกไทยดำ

water	bread	drink	menu	coffee	dessert
nám น้ำ	khà-nŏm-bpang ขนมปัง	khrûueang dùuem เครื่องดื่ม	mee-nuu เมนู	gaa-faae กาแฟ	khà-nŏm-wăan ขนมหวาน

Complimenting and Criticizing the Food

It's delicious!
a-ràauy
อร่อย

It looks tasty.
man duu nâa a-ràauy
มันดูน่าอร่อย

It's very good.
man dii mâak
มันดีมาก

It's overcooked.
sùk gooen bpai
สุกเกินไป

It lacks salt.
khàat rót khem
ขาดรสเค็ม

It's raw!
yang dìp yùu looei
ยังดิบอยู่เลย

It smells so nice.
glìn hăawm jang
กลิ่นหอมจัง

This is not fresh.
man mâi sòt
มันไม่สด

It's too spicy.
man phèt gooen bpai
มันเผ็ดเกินไป

Food Allergies & Restrictions!

I am allergic to ~.
chăn pháae~
ฉันแพ้~

meat	eggs	milk	peanuts	shellfish	wheat	soy	fish
núuea เนื้อ	khài ไข่	nom นม	thùua-lí-sŏng ถั่วลิสง	hăauy หอย	khâao-săa-lii ข้าวสาลี	thùua lŭueang ถั่วเหลือง	bplaa ปลา

I am a vegetarian.
chăn bpen mang-sà-wí-rát
ฉันเป็นมังสวิรัติ

I am a vegan.
chăn gin jee
ฉันกินเจ

I can't eat pork.
chăn gin mŭu mâi dâi
ฉันกินหมูไม่ได้

ThaiPod101.com

Save 50% on any
ThaiPod101.com subscription
with coupon code

AUDIOBOOK

Gain access to hundreds of audio and video lessons, lesson notes, online vocabulary, flashcards, the voice recording tool and more with a Basic or Premium Subscription!

Click here to get started today!

innovative LANGUAGE.COM

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #1 Thank You! in Thai

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

1

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ขอบคุณนะคะ
2. ขอบคุณนะครับ
3. ขอบคุณมากนะคะ
4. ขอบคุณมากนะครับ
5. ขอบใจจ่ะ

ENGLISH

1. Thank you (female).
2. Thank you (male).
3. Thank you very much (female).
4. Thank you very much (male).
5. Thanks!

ROMANIZATION

1. khàawp-khun ná khá

CONT'D OVER

2. khàawp-khun ná khráp

3. khàawp-khun mâak ná khá

4. khàawp-khun mâak ná khráp

5. khàawp-jai jà

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ขอบคุณ	*khàawp-khun*	Thank you.	Expression
ขอบใจ	*khàawp-jai*	Thanks.	Expression
นะ	*ná*	particle used to soften speech	particle
ครับ	*khráp*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is a male	particle
มาก	*mâak*	very	adverb
คะ	*khá*	a polite ending particle for female speakers for questions and requests	particle

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ขอบคุณมากสำหรับความช่วยเหลือ *khàawp-khun mâak săm-ràp khwaam-chûuai lŭuea* "Thank you so much for your help."	ขอบคุณมากนะคะ *khàawp-khun mâak ná khá* "Thank you very much."
ขอบใจ *khàawp-jai.* "Thanks!"	คุณเป็นคนที่ไหนนะครับ *khun bpen khon thîi-năi ná khráp.* "Where are you from, again?"
อย่าลืมบันทึกข่าวคืนนี้นะคะ *yàa luuem ban-thúek khàao khuuen níi ná khá* "Don't forget to record tonight's news."	ไปก่อนนะครับ *bpai gàawn ná khráp.* "I'm going now."
สบายดีไหมครับ *sà-baai-dii măi khráp* "How are you?"	สวัสดีครับ ไม่ได้เจอกันตั้งนาน *sà-wàt-dii khráp mâi-dâi jooe gan dtâng-naan* "Hello! Long time no see!"
ไม่เป็นไรครับ *mâi-bpen-rai khráp* "No problem."	ผมเป็นนักวิจัยครับ *phŏm bpen nák-wí-jai khráp* "I am a researcher."
ผมตื่นเต้นมากที่ได้เจอเธอเมื่อวาน *phŏm dtùuen-dtên mâak thîi dâai jooe thooe mûuea-waan* "I was very excited to see her yesterday."	ขอบคุณมากนะคะ *khàawp-khun mâak ná khá* "Thank you very much."
เด็กสาวชอบสุนัขมาก *dèk-săao châawp sù-nák mâak* "The young girl really likes the puppies."	อย่าลืมบันทึกข่าวคืนนี้นะคะ *yàa luuem ban-thúek khàao khuuen níi ná khá* "Don't forget to record tonight's news."

GRAMMAR

Wherever your destination may be, manners are a must! And in this respect, Thailand is no different. So in our very first lesson, we'll be taking a look at a phrase you have no excuse not to bring with you to Thailand. Again, I'll stress this over and over: a little a bit of the language can go such a long way!

In Thai, "thank you" is *khàawp-khun*. *Khàawp-khun*. Now, let's hear it once again. *Khàawp-khun*. What is so unique about Thai is that we have words to add at the end of the phrase to make it polite and formal or even to make it friendlier. To make it more polite and formal, we add one word at the end of the phrase. For women, we add *khâ*. And for men, we add *khráp*. That means that when a woman says "thank you," she says *khàawp-khun khâ*. And a man would say *khàawp-khun khráp*. Sometimes you may hear people say it slightly different as *khàawp-khun ná khâ* or *khàawp-khun ná khráp*. We usually use the word *ná* to express pleasantness or begging, but in this phrase, Thai people add this word to make the phrase sound smoother. You can use *khàawp-khun ná khá* or *khàawp-khun ná khráp* everywhere, at any time, and to anybody. It is the most common form of saying "thank you" in Thai. You can use it when people open the door for you, at the store, or even when someone gives you a compliment.

However, there are more interesting ways of saying "thank you" in Thai. If you want to say "thank you very much," just add one word and you are good to go. In Thai, "thank you very much" is *khàawp-khun mâak*. The meaning of *mâak* is equivalent to "very" in English. We add *mâak* at the end of the phrase along with *ná* to make it sound smoother. As a result, "thank you very much" for women is *khàawp-khun mâak ná khâ*, and for men, it is *khàawp-khun mâak ná khráp*.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip 1

How about saying "thanks" to a friend? Make just a little change to the word, and then the meaning is different. When you want to say "thanks" to your friends, you may say *khàawp-jai*. You may say this to someone younger than you or someone with lower social status than you, such as your younger sister. *Khàawp-jai* indicates that you are very close to the person. However, we don't add the words *khâ*, *khráp*, or *ná* to make it more polite, but instead we add the word *jà*. This means, for both men and women, we say *khàawp-jai jà*.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #2 You're Welcome! in Thai

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

2

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ด้วยความยินดีค่ะ
2. ด้วยความยินดีครับ
3. ไม่เป็นไรค่ะ
4. ไม่เป็นไรครับ

ENGLISH

1. You’re welcome (female).
2. You’re welcome (male).
3. It's okay (female).
4. It's okay (male).

ROMANIZATION

1. dûuai khwaam-yin-dii khâ
2. dûuai khwaam-yin-dii khráp
3. mâi-bpen-rai khâ

CONT'D OVER

4. mâi-bpen-rai khráp

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ไม่เป็นไร	*mâi-bpen-rai*	It's okay. / No problem.	Expression
ด้วยความยินดี	*dûuai khwaam-yin-dii*	You’re welcome.	Expression
ครับ	*khráp*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is a male	particle
ค่ะ	*khâ*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is female	particle
ไม่	*mâi*	not	adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ไม่เป็นไรครับ *mâi-bpen-rai khráp* "No problem."	ด้วยความยินดีค่ะ *dûuai khwaam-yin-dii khâ* "You're welcome."

สบายดีไหมครับ *sà-baai-dii măi khráp* "How are you?"	สวัสดีครับ ไม่ได้เจอกันตั้งนาน *sà-wàt-dii khráp mâi-dâi jooe gan dtâng-naan* "Hello! Long time no see!"
ไม่เป็นไรครับ *mâi-bpen-rai khráp* "No problem."	ผมเป็นนักวิจัยครับ *phŏm bpen nák-wí-jai khráp* "I am a researcher."
ดิฉันเป็นครูค่ะ *dì-chăn bpen khruu khâ* "I'm a teacher."	เจอกันใหม่พรุ่งนี้ สวัสดีค่ะ *jooe gan mài phrûng-níi sà-wàt-dii khâ* "See you again tomorrow. Good-bye."
ขอบคุณมากค่ะ *khàawp-khun mâak khâ* "Thank you very much."	ผู้หญิงไม่ชอบสิ่งที่เธอได้ยิน *phûu-yĭng mâi châawp sìng thîi thooe dâai yin* "The woman dislikes what she hears."

GRAMMAR

In today's lesson, we continue with basic etiquette. Thai people have a reputation for their exceptional hospitality and being generous. Therefore, we use phrases of gratitude and relate phrases at an extremely high frequency.

In Thai, "you're welcome" is *dûuai khwaam-yin-dii*. Remember that we always add *khâ* for women and *khráp* for men to make the phrase more polite. That means "you're welcome" for women is *dûuai khwaam-yin-dii khâ*. And for men, it is *dûuai khwaam-yin-dii khráp*. This is a very formal and polite way of saying "you're welcome."

There is another equivalent phrase you will hear Thai people say when you say "thank you" to them. For women, it's *mâi-bpen-rai khâ*, and for men, it is *mâi-bpen-rai khráp.* This phrase is equivalent to "it's okay" in English. So it is less formal than the *dûuai khwaam-yin-dii*.
The difference between *dûuai khwaam-yin-dii* and *mâi-bpen-rai* is the level of thankfulness for the task you provided. If you do something because it was your duty or with honor, you respond to the thanks with *dûuai khwaam-yin-dii*. When you do something out of generosity, you may say *mâi-bpen-rai*. Remember to add *khâ* or *khráp* at the end of the phrase to make it

more polite.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip

Another usage of the phrase *mâi-bpen-rai:* The usage of the phrase *mâi-bpen-rai* is not only limited to when responding to "thanks." Thais also say *mâi-bpen-rai* when responding to "sorry" to show the speaker that the matter is unimportant; let's not be serious about it. In this context, *mâi-bpen-rai* can be translated to English as "It doesn't matter," "Never mind," "Don't mention it," or "It's no big deal." And make sure you smile when you say the phrase as proof that you really won't give a second thought to the matter.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #3 Please in Thai

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

3

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ขออันนี้ค่ะ
2. ขออันนี้ครับ
3. ขออันนั้นค่ะ
4. ขออันนั้นครับ

ENGLISH

1. I'd like to have this item. (female)
2. I'd like to have this item. (male)
3. I'd like to have that item. (female)
4. I'd like to have that item. (male)

ROMANIZATION

1. khăaw an níi khâ
2. khăaw an níi khráp
3. khăaw an nán khâ

CONT'D OVER

4. khăaw an nán khráp

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ขอ	*khăaw*	to request	verb
นี้	*níi*	this	adjective
นั้น	*nán*	that	adjective
อัน	*an*	classifier for small objects, general classifier	classifier
ครับ	*khráp*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is a male	particle
ค่ะ	*khâ*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is female	particle

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ขอกาแฟหนึ่งถ้วย *khăaw gaa-faae nùeng thûuai.* "One coffee please."	ดิฉันซื้อบ้านหลังนี้เมื่อสองปีก่อน *dì-chăn súue bâan lăng níi mûuea săawng bpii gàawn* "I bought this house two years ago."
อันนี้ภาษาไทยเรียกว่าอะไร *an-níi phaa-săa-thai rîiak wâa à-rai.* "What is this called in Thai?"	ผมไม่ชอบผู้ชายคนนั้นเลย *phŏm mâi châawp phûu-chaai khon nán looei.* "I don't like that man at all."
อันนี้ราคาเท่าไหร่ *an-níi raa-khaa thâo-rài.* "How much does this one cost?"	สบายดีไหมครับ *sà-baai-dii măi khráp* "How are you?"
สวัสดีครับ ไม่ได้เจอกันตั้งนาน *sà-wàt-dii khráp mâi-dâi jooe gan dtâng-naan* "Hello! Long time no see!"	ไม่เป็นไรครับ *mâi-bpen-rai khráp* "No problem."
ผมเป็นนักวิจัยครับ *phŏm bpen nák-wí-jai khráp* "I am a researcher."	ดิฉันเป็นครูค่ะ *dì-chăn bpen khruu khâ* "I'm a teacher."
เจอกันใหม่พรุ่งนี้ สวัสดีค่ะ *jooe gan mài phrûng-níi sà-wàt-dii khâ* "See you again tomorrow. Good-bye."	ขอบคุณมากค่ะ *khàawp-khun mâak khâ* "Thank you very much."

GRAMMAR

In today's lesson, we'll take a look at "please," as in asking for something.

To politely ask for something in Thai, we use *khăaw an níi*. As we always add *khâ* and *khráp* at the end of the phrase to make it more polite, women say *khăaw an níi khâ*, while men say *khăaw an níi khráp*. This phrase means "I'd like to have this item." You may use this phrase

when you are asking for something from someone while pointing at the item you want.

We can say "I'd like to have that item" simply by replacing the words *an níi* with *an nán*. This means for women, you may say *khăaw an nán khâ*. For men, you may say *khăaw an nán khráp*. The use of these two phrases is similar to the use of the English equivalent phrases.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip

Another phrase to remember is *ao an năi khá* or *ao an năi khráp*? which means "Which one do you want?" There's a good chance you will hear Thai people ask you this question. You may respond back with the phrases we learned from this lesson.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #4
Basic Thai Greetings

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
4 Cultural Insight

4

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. สวัสดีค่ะ
2. สวัสดีครับ
3. หวัดดีค่ะ
4. หวัดดีครับ

ENGLISH

1. Hello. (feminine)
2. Hello. (masculine)
3. Hello. (casual, feminine)
4. Hello. (casual, masculine)

ROMANIZATION

1. sà-wàt-dii khâ.
2. sà-wàt-dii khráp.
3. wàt-dii khâ.

CONT'D OVER

4. wàt-dii khráp.

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
สวัสดี	*sà-wàt-dii*	Hello.	expression
ค่ะ	*khâ*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is female	particle
ครับ	*khráp*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is a male	particle
หวัดดี	*wàt-dii*	Hello. / Hi.	Expression

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ผู้คนกำลังพูดว่า "สวัสดี" *phûu-khon gam-lang phûut wâa sà-wàt-dii* "The people are saying, 'Hello.'"	สวัสดีครับ ไม่ได้เจอกันตั้งนาน *sà-wàt-dii khráp mâi-dâi jooe gan dtâng-naan* "Hello! Long time no see!"
สวัสดี ศิริพร *sà-wàt-dii, sì-rì-phaawn.* "Hello, Siriporn."	สวัสดีครับคุณศิริพร *sà-wàt-dii khráp, khun sì-rí-phaawn.* "Hello, Ms. Siriporn."

ดิฉันเป็นครูค่ะ *dì-chăn bpen khruu khâ* "I'm a teacher."	เจอกันใหม่พรุ่งนี้ สวัสดีค่ะ *jooe gan mài phrûng-níi sà-wàt-dii khâ* "See you again tomorrow. Good-bye."
ขอบคุณมากค่ะ *khàawp-khun mâak khâ* "Thank you very much."	สบายดีไหมครับ *sà-baai-dii măi khráp* "How are you?"
สวัสดีครับ ไม่ได้เจอกันตั้งนาน *sà-wàt-dii khráp mâi-dâi jooe gan dtâng-naan* "Hello! Long time no see!"	ไม่เป็นไรครับ *mâi-bpen-rai khráp* "No problem."
ผมเป็นนักวิจัยครับ *phŏm bpen nák-wí-jai khráp* "I am a researcher."	หวัดดี *wàt-dii.* "Hi!"

GRAMMAR

Today we'll cover basic greetings for the appropriate time of the day.

Thai has an appropriate greeting that we can use at any time and to anybody. For women, it is *sà-wàt-dii khâ*, and for men, it is *sà-wàt-dii khráp*. The word *sà-wàt-dii* means "goodness," which Thai people use in meaning to wish a person goodness. You can use this at any time of the day and to anybody. You may use this as a basic greeting, when you answer the phone, or even when you say good-bye.

Like many other languages, Thai people tend to shorten words and phrases from time to time. You may hear Thai people say *wàt-dii* instead of *sà-wàt-dii*. We tend to use this shorter phrase as an informal form of greeting. But it is very common for Thai people to say this as well. You may choose to add *khâ* or *khráp* to make it more polite but remain casual.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip

When Thai people say hello, they usually *wâai* the person. *Wâai* is the traditional way to show respect along with the greeting by putting together both palms at your chest level and bowing your head. Thai people also *wâai* as a way to say sorry, thank you, good-bye, pray to Buddha, and they also use it as a way to beg for something. However, there are cultural rules in there. You must *wâai* the older person first, which means you must wait for the younger to *wâai* you first. And after the younger *wâai*, you may *wâai* them back without bowing your head.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #5 Parting Thai Greetings

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
2 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

5

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. สวัสดี

2. ไปก่อนนะคะ สวัสดีค่ะ

3. ไปก่อนนะครับ สวัสดีครับ

ENGLISH

1. Hello. / Good-bye.

2. I'm going now. Good-bye. (female)

3. I'm going now. Good-bye. (male)

ROMANIZATION

1. sà-wàt-dii.

2. bpai gàawn ná khá. sà-wàt-dii khâ.

3. bpai gàawn ná khráp. sà-wàt-dii khráp.

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
สวัสดี	*sà-wàt-dii*	Hello.	expression

นะ	*ná*	particle used to soften speech	particle
ไป	*bpai*	to go	Verb
ก่อน	*gàawn*	before	Preposition
ค่ะ	*khâ*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is female	particle
ครับ	*khráp*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is a male	particle

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ผู้คนกำลังพูดว่า "สวัสดี" *phûu-khon gam-lang phûut wâa sà-wàt-dii* "The people are saying, 'Hello.'"	สวัสดีครับ ไม่ได้เจอกันตั้งนาน *sà-wàt-dii khráp mâi-dâi jooe gan dtâng-naan* "Hello! Long time no see!"
สวัสดี ศิริพร *sà-wàt-dii, sì-rì-phaawn.* "Hello, Siriporn."	สวัสดีครับคุณศิริพร *sà-wàt-dii khráp, khun sì-rí-phaawn.* "Hello, Ms. Siriporn."
คุณเป็นคนที่ไหนนะครับ *khun bpen khon thîi-năi ná khráp.* "Where are you from, again?"	อย่าลืมบันทึกข่าวคืนนี้นะคะ *yàa luuem ban-thúek khàao khuuen níi ná khá* "Don't forget to record tonight's news."

ไปก่อนนะครับ *bpai gàawn ná khráp.* "I'm going now."	เขาไปโรงเรียนโดยรถเมล์ *khăo bpai roong-rian dooi rót-mee.* "He goes to school by bus."
ขอตั๋วไปพัทยาสองใบ *khăaw dtŭua bpai phát-thá-yaa săawng bai* "Two tickets to Pattaya please."	ไปก่อนนะครับ *bpai gàawn ná khráp.* "I'm going now."
คุณต้องคิดให้ดีก่อนที่จะทำนะ อย่าให้ประวัติศาสตร์ซ้ำรอย *khun dtâwng khít hâi dii gàawn thîi jà tham ná yàa hâi bprà-wàt-sàat sám raawy.* "You have to think carefully before taking action; don't repeat what has happened in history."	ดิฉันเป็นครูค่ะ *dì-chăn bpen khruu khâ* "I'm a teacher."
เจอกันใหม่พรุ่งนี้ สวัสดีค่ะ *jooe gan mài phrûng-níi sà-wàt-dii khâ* "See you again tomorrow. Good-bye."	ขอบคุณมากค่ะ *khàawp-khun mâak khâ* "Thank you very much."
สบายดีไหมครับ *sà-baai-dii măi khráp* "How are you?"	สวัสดีครับ ไม่ได้เจอกันตั้งนาน *sà-wàt-dii khráp mâi-dâi jooe gan dtâng-naan* "Hello! Long time no see!"
ไม่เป็นไรครับ *mâi-bpen-rai khráp* "No problem."	ผมเป็นนักวิจัยครับ *phŏm bpen nák-wí-jai khráp* "I am a researcher."

GRAMMAR

Today we'll introduce parting greetings: words or phrases that you can use on an occasion when you are done doing business with someone and want to leave. There are quite a few parting phrases that you can use, so let's get started.

In Thai, the word for "hello" and "good-bye" is the same word, which is *sà-wàt-dii khâ* for women and *sà-wàt-dii khráp* for men. It is very common for Thai people to say *sà-wàt-dii* when they finish their business or conversation and want to leave. This word is a formal form that you can use at any time of the day; however, if you want to be less formal with your friends, you may use the English word "bye-bye" instead. It is also very common for Thai people to use this English word with their friends or family.

There is another phrase that you can use in conjunction with *sà-wàt-dii* in order to say good-bye. You may say "I'm going now. Good-bye," which in Thai is *bpai gàawn ná khá*. *sà-wàt-dii khâ* for women, while men say *bpai gàawn ná khráp*. *sà-wàt-dii khráp*. The first word, *bpai*, means "go," followed by *gàawn*, which means "before." We cannot really translate the next word, *ná*, but we add it to make the phrase smoother. The word *sà-wàt-dii* literally means "peace" or "good luck," but it also means "good-bye." We add *khâ* or *khráp* to make the phrase more polite. Now we have "go," "before," and "good-bye." This phrase literally means "I'm leaving before you, so good-bye." However, as a Thai custom, this phrase is a common way to say that you are about to leave. Therefore, *bpai gàawn ná khá. sà-wàt-dii khâ* and *bpai gàawn ná khráp. sà-wàt-dii khráp* are equivalent to the English phrase "I'm going now. Good-bye."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip

The word "good-bye" in Thai is actually *laa gàawn*. However, Thai people do not use this word anymore as it represents sadness due to a departure when the people might not get to see each other again. Therefore, Thai people tend to use the English word "bye-bye," which represents a more cheerful and hopeful expression.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #6 Where's The Bathroom?

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
2 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
4 Cultural Insight

6

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ห้องน้ำอยู่ไหนครับ

2. ห้องน้ำอยู่ไหนคะ

ENGLISH

1. Where is the bathroom (male)?

2. Where is the bathroom (female)?

ROMANIZATION

1. hâwng-náam yùu năi khráp.

2. hâwng-náam yùu năi khá.

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ห้อง	*hâwng*	room	Noun
ห้องน้ำ	*hâwng-náam*	bathroom, restroom, toilet	Noun
น้ำ	*náam*	water	Noun
อยู่	*yùu*	to be located	verb
ไหน	*năi*	where	adverb

คะ	*khá*	a polite ending particle for female speakers for questions and requests	particle
ครับ	*khráp*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is a male	particle

SAMPLE SENTENCES

นักเรียนคนไหนเรียนเก่งที่สุดในห้อง *nák-riian khon năi riian gèng thîi-sùt nai hâwng* "Which student in the classroom studies the best?"	ห้องน้ำอยู่ที่ไหนครับ *hâwng-náam yùu thîi-năi khráp.* "Where is the bathroom?"
กบตัวสีเขียวอยู่ในน้ำ *gòp dtuua sĭi-khĭiao yùu nai náam* "The green frog is in the water."	คุณอยู่ที่นี่นานเท่าไหร่แล้วคะ *khun yùu thîi nîi naan thâo-rài láaeo khá.* "How long have you been here?"
ดิฉันจะพักอยู่ที่กรุงเทพฯ สี่วัน *dì-chăn jà phák yùu thîi grung-thêep sìi wan.* "I'll stay in Bangkok for four days."	ห้องน้ำอยู่ที่ไหนครับ *hâwng-náam yùu thîi-năi khráp.* "Where is the bathroom?"
อย่าลืมบันทึกข่าวคืนนี้นะคะ *yàa luuem ban-thúek khàao khuuen níi ná khá* "Don't forget to record tonight's news."	สบายดีไหมครับ *sà-baai-dii măi khráp* "How are you?"

สวัสดีครับ ไม่ได้เจอกันตั้งนาน *sà-wàt-dii khráp mâi-dâi jooe gan dtâng-naan* "Hello! Long time no see!"	ไม่เป็นไรครับ *mâi-bpen-rai khráp* "No problem."

ผมเป็นนักวิจัยครับ
phŏm bpen nák-wí-jai khráp

"I am a researcher."

GRAMMAR

In today's lesson, we will cover one important phrase, which is "Where is the bathroom?"

In Thai, to ask "Where is the bathroom?" we say *hâwng-náam yùu năi?* As always, we add *khá* for women and *khráp* for men to make it sound more polite. Therefore, it is *hâwng-náam yùu năi khá?* for women and *hâwng-náam yùu năi khráp?* for men.

Thai people use the word *hâwng-náam* for "bathroom," "toilet," "restroom," and sometimes "shower room." When you use "Where is the bathroom?" it generally means you are looking for a toilet. It is a phrase that we commonly use.

Finding the way to the restroom is much harder than looking for the right one. Almost every bathroom in Thailand does have a sign indicating which one is for males and which one is for females. You will find either English words saying "male" or "female" or an image of a man or a woman posted in front of the restroom door.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip

If you are not sure you will understand when Thai people tell you the direction to the restroom in Thai, it is a better idea to ask them in English because if you ask them in Thai, they will expect you to understand them. Many Thai can speak very good English, especially people in Bangkok. In some cases, especially finding the restroom, we need a quick, easy-to-understand direction.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #7 Can You Speak English?

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
4 Cultural Insight

7

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. พูดภาษาอังกฤษได้ไหมครับ
2. พูดภาษาอังกฤษได้ไหมคะ
3. พูดภาษาฝรั่งเศสได้ไหมครับ
4. พูดภาษาฝรั่งเศสได้ไหมคะ

ENGLISH

1. Can you speak English? (male)
2. Can you speak English? (female)
3. Can you speak French? (male)
4. Can you speak French? (female)

ROMANIZATION

1. phûut paa-săa ang-grìt dâai măi khráp.
2. phûut paa-săa ang-grìt dâai măi khá.
3. phûut paa-săa fà-ràng-sèet dâai măi khráp.

CONT'D OVER

4. phûut paa-săa fà-ràng-sèet dâai măi khá.

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ฝรั่งเศส	*fà-ràng-sèet*	French	adjective
พูด	*phûut*	to speak	Verb
ภาษา	*phaa-săa*	language	Noun
ได้	*dâai*	to be able to	auxiliary verb
ไหม	*măi*	a particle indicating a yes/no question	particle
อังกฤษ	*ang-grìt*	English	adjective

SAMPLE SENTENCES

เขาพูดภาษาอังกฤษด้วยสำเนียงฝรั่งเศส *khăo phûut paa-săa-ang-grìt dûuai săm-niiang fà-ràng-sèet.* "He speaks English with a French accent."	ช่วยพูดดังๆได้ไหมครับ *chûuai phûut dang-dang dâai măi khráp.* "Could you please speak loudly?"
ช่วยพูดช้าๆอีกครั้งได้ไหม *chûuai phûut cháa-cháa ìik-khráng dâai măi* "Could you say that slowly one more time?"	อันนี้ภาษาไทยเรียกว่าอะไร *an-níi phaa-săa-thai rîiak wâa à-rai.* "What is this called in Thai?"
วิศวกรคนนั้นพูดภาษาอังกฤษได้ *wít-sà-wá-gaawn khon nán phûut pha-săa-ang-grìt dâai.* "That engineer can speak English."	ช่วยพูดช้าๆได้ไหม *chûuai phûut cháa-cháa dâai măi.* "Could you say that more slowly?"

สบายดีไหมครับ *sà-baai-dii măi khráp* "How are you?"	ช่วยพูดอีกครั้งได้ไหม *chûuai phûut ìik khráng dâai măi.* "Could you say that one more time?"

เขาพูดภาษาอังกฤษไม่ได้เลย
khăo phûut phaa-săa-ang-grìt mâi dâai looei.

"He can't speak English at all."

GRAMMAR

In today's lesson, we'll cover another extremely important phrase: "Can you speak English?" Using this phrase as opposed to speaking English at someone is important for many reasons. For one, if the party you're speaking to doesn't understand English, at least he or she will be able to understand what you're asking. Furthermore, it shows a lot of respect to show that you took the effort to learn even a little bit of the language, and for these reasons and many more, we're going to cover this phrase.

In Thai, "Do you speak English?" is *phûut paa-săa-ang-grìt dâai măi?* As usual, don't forget to add *khá* and *khráp* to make it more polite. So for women, it's *phûut paa-săa-ang-grìt dâai măi khá*, and for men, it's *phûut paa-săa-ang-grìt dâai măi khráp?*

The first word, *phûut*, means "speak" or "talk." The next word is *paa-săa*, which means "language." The third word is *ang-grìt*, which means "English." The next word is *dâai*, which means "can," and the last one is *măi*, which indicates that this phrase is a question. In Thai, it is very common to leave out the word for "you." Therefore, *phûut paa-săa-jiin dâai măi* is equivalent to the question "Can you speak English?"

Another language that Thai people may speak beside Thai and English is Chinese. The word for Chinese is *jiin*. Therefore, if you want to ask "Can you speak Chinese?" you may say *phûut paa-săa-jiin dâai măi khá* or *phûut paa-săa-jiin dâai măi khráp?*

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip

Most Thai people can speak English at least at some level. You will find Thai people understand when you speak English but cannot respond back as they tend to be afraid of saying things incorrectly.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #8
I Don't Understand in Thai

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
2 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

8

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ดิฉันไม่เข้าใจค่ะ
2. ผมไม่เข้าใจครับ
3. ฉันไม่เข้าใจ

ENGLISH

1. I don't understand (female).
2. I don't understand (male).
3. I don't understand (casual).

ROMANIZATION

1. dì-chăn mâi khâo-jai khâ.
2. phŏm mâi khâo-jai khráp.
3. chăn mâi khâo-jai.

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ไม่	*mâi*	not	adverb

ดิฉัน	*dì-chăn*	I (when the speaker is female)	pronoun
ผม	*phŏm*	I (when the speaker is male)	Noun
เข้าใจ	*khâo-jai*	to understand	verb
ฉัน	*chăn*	I (informal)	pronoun
ค่ะ	*khâ*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is female	particle
ครับ	*khráp*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is a male	particle

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ผู้หญิงไม่ชอบสิ่งที่เธอได้ยิน *phûu-yĭng mâi châawp sìng thîi thooe dâai yin* "The woman dislikes what she hears."	ดิฉันเป็นครูค่ะ *dì-chăn bpen khruu khâ* "I'm a teacher."
ดิฉันทานข้าว *dì-chăn thaan khâao.* "I eat rice." / "I have a meal."	ผมจะรักคุณตลอดไป *phŏm jà rák khun dtà-làawt-bpai.* "I will always love you."

ผมชื่อวิทยา ยินดีที่ได้รู้จัก *phŏm chûue wít-thá-yaa. yin-dii thîi dâai rúu-jàk.* "My name is Wittaya. Nice to meet you."	ผมทานขนมปัง *phŏm thaan khà-nŏm-bpang.* "I eat bread."
ผมรักคุณ *phŏm rák khun.* "I love you."	คุณเข้าใจไหมครับ *khun khâo-jai măi khráp* "Do you understand?"
ฉันรักเธอ *chăn rák thooe.* "I love you."	ดิฉันเป็นครูค่ะ *dì-chăn bpen khruu khâ* "I'm a teacher."
เจอกันใหม่พรุ่งนี้ สวัสดีค่ะ *jooe gan mài phrûng-níi sà-wàt-dii khâ* "See you again tomorrow. Good-bye."	ขอบคุณมากค่ะ *khàawp-khun mâak khâ* "Thank you very much."
สบายดีไหมครับ *sà-baai-dii măi khráp* "How are you?"	สวัสดีครับ ไม่ได้เจอกันตั้งนาน *sà-wàt-dii khráp mâi-dâi jooe gan dtâng-naan* "Hello! Long time no see!"
ไม่เป็นไรครับ *mâi-bpen-rai khráp* "No problem."	ผมเป็นนักวิจัยครับ *phŏm bpen nák-wí-jai khráp* "I am a researcher."

GRAMMAR

The phrase "I don't understand" is going to be a very useful phrase because most of the time, maybe even almost one hundred percent of the time, you'll come across a word or phrase that you won't understand.

Before we learn how to say "I don't understand," let's look at Thai grammar first. Unlike English where everybody uses "I" to represent himself or herself, Thai has many forms of "I"

depending on gender and social status. The first one is the formal form of "I." For women, we use *dì-chăn*, and for men, we use *phŏm*. The next one is *chăn*. This word is casual and both women and men can use it; however, we hear women say it more often while men often use just *phŏm* in any circumstance.

The formal form of saying "I don't understand" is *dì-chăn mâi khâo-jai khâ* for women. Men say *phŏm mâi khâo-jai khráp*. As mentioned earlier, *dì-chăn* and *phŏm* mean "I," followed by *mâi*, which means "no" or "not." The next word is *khâo-jai*, which means "understand." And as usual, we add *khâ* and *khráp* to make it sound more polite. As this is a formal form, you may say this when you speak to someone you don't know very well, someone who has higher social status than you do, or someone you respect.

The casual way to say "I don't understand" is simply to replace *dì-chăn* or *phŏm* with *chăn*, which means "I" but is informal. Therefore, we say *chăn mâi khâo-jai*. As this is a casual form, we don't need to add *khâ* or *khráp* to make it sound polite, although some people add them anyway. You may use this phrase when you speak to your friends or when you are speaking to someone who has lower or equal social status to you. Remember, both women and men can use this phrase although women tend to use it more often while men stick with *phŏm mâi khâo-jai*.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip

There are many words to represent "I" in Thai. Most of the time, it depends on the gender, age, social status, and relationship between persons. For business use, *dì-chăn* and *phŏm* are the most suitable. This includes between supervisor-assistant, colleagues, and business partners. The less formal forms are *chăn* and *phŏm*, which you could use with those you are close to. We mostly use *chăn* between friends. Each region has a different tone for *chăn*. Bear in mind that it is the same word though the tones are different.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #9
Say It Again, Please in Thai

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

9

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. พูดอีกทีได้ไหมคะ
2. พูดอีกทีได้ไหมครับ
3. ช้าๆนะคะ
4. ช้าๆนะครับ
5. พูดช้าๆอีกทีได้ไหมคะ
6. พูดช้าๆอีกทีได้ไหมครับ

ENGLISH

1. Can you say it one more time? (female)
2. Can you say it one more time? (male)
3. Slowly please. (female)
4. Slowly please. (male)
5. Can you say it one more time slowly please? (female)
6. Can you say it one more time slowly please? (male)

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. phûut ìik thii dâai măi khá.

2. phûut ìik thii dâai măi khráp.

3. cháa-cháa ná khá.

4. cháa-cháa ná khráp.

5. phûut cháa-cháa ìik thii dâai măi khá.

6. phûut cháa-cháa ìik thii dâai măi khráp.

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
พูด	*phûut*	to speak	Verb
อีก	*ìik*	again, another	adverb, adjective
ที	*thii*	turn, instance	noun
ได้	*dâai*	to be able to	auxiliary verb
ไหม	*măi*	a particle indicating a yes/no question	particle
ช้าๆ	*cháa-cháa*	slowly	adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ช่วยพูดดังๆได้ไหมครับ *chûuai phûut dang-dang dâai măi khráp.* "Could you please speak loudly?"	ช่วยพูดช้าๆอีกครั้งได้ไหม *chûuai phûut cháa-cháa ìik-khráng dâai măi* "Could you say that slowly one more time?"
อีกห้านาทีจะสิบห้านาฬิกา *ìik hâa naa-thii jà sìp-hâa naa-lí-gaa* "It is 5 minutes to 3 o'clock in the afternoon."	ช่วยพูดช้าๆอีกครั้งได้ไหม *chûuai phûut cháa-cháa ìik-khráng dâai măi* "Could you say that slowly one more time?"
ผมอยากดูหนังเรื่องนั้นอีกที *phŏm yàak duu năng rûueang nán ìik thii.* "I want to watch that movie again."	วิศวกรคนนั้นพูดภาษาอังกฤษได้ *wít-sà-wá-gaawn khon nán phûut pha-săa-ang-grìt dâai.* "That engineer can speak English."
ช่วยพูดช้าๆได้ไหม *chûuai phûut cháa-cháa dâai măi.* "Could you say that more slowly?"	สบายดีไหมครับ *sà-baai-dii măi khráp* "How are you?"
ช่วยพูดอีกครั้งได้ไหม *chûuai phûut ìik khráng dâai măi.* "Could you say that one more time?"	ช่วยขับช้าๆได้ไหมครับ *chûuai khàp cháa-cháa dâai măi khráp.* "Could you please drive slowly?"

จระเข้กำลังเคลื่อนไหวอย่างช้าๆ ผ่านน้ำ

jaaw-rá-khêe gam-lang khlûuean-wăi yàang cháa-cháa phàan náam

"The alligators are slowly moving through the water."

GRAMMAR

Thai people tend to shorten words and speak at a speedy speed. It is very likely that you will not understand them. In instances like this, asking the speaker to say it again can prove the difference between understanding a crucial piece of information and spending the rest of the

day trying to figure out just what was said. So that you can get a feel for the language and tune your ear, you should use the following phrase over and over.

In Thai, to ask the person to say it "Once again, please" is *phûut ìik thii dâai măi*. As always, we add *khá* for women and *khráp* for men at the end of the phrase to make it more polite. That means for women, we say *phûut ìik thii dâai măi khá*. And for men, it is *phûut ìik thii dâai măi khráp*.

The first word is *phûut*, which means "speak" or "talk." The next word, *ìik thii*, means "one more time," followed by *dâai*, which means "can," and *măi* indicates that this phrase is a question. As usual, the phrase should be followed by *khá* or *khráp*, which makes the phrase sound more polite. Therefore, *phûut ìik thii dâai măi khá* and *phûut ìik thii dâai măi khráp* are equivalent to "Can you speak one more time, please?"

At times, even repetition of what is said isn't enough to understand the speaker, as the words are still too fast. For an instance like this, you may use the phrase "Slowly, please." In Thai, "Slowly, please" is *cháa-cháa ná*. *Cháa-cháa* means "slowly," while *ná* in this phrase indicates that this is a request. Therefore, to say "Slowly, please," women should say *cháa-cháa ná khá,* and men should say *cháa-cháa ná khráp*.

We can use the phrases "Once again, please" and "Slowly, please" together. For women, it's *phûut ìik thii dâai măi khá. cháa-cháa ná khá*. And for men, *phûut ìik thii dâai măi khráp. cháa-cháa ná khráp.*

Another option is to combine those two phrases together. You may say *phûut cháa-cháa ìik thii dâai măi?* As usual, it is *phûut cháa-cháa ìik thii dâai măi khá?* for women and *phûut cháa-cháa ìik thii dâai măi khráp?* for men. This phrase literally means "Can you speak one more time slowly, please?"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip

In Thai society, it is very important to express your gratitude to people who helped you by saying *khàawp-khun* which means "thank you" in English or *khàawp-jai* which is "thanks." The phrase *khàawp-khun* is commonly used to respond to ones who you meet for the first time, who are older or higher in rank than you. However, if the one who helped you is about your age, younger or lower in rank than you, you may say *khàawp-jai* instead.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #10 Apologies in Thai

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
3 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
4 Sample Sentences
6 Grammar
6 Cultural Insight

10

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ครับ
2. คะ
3. ขอโทษนะครับ
4. ขอโทษนะคะ
5. ไม่เป็นไรครับ
6. ไม่เป็นไรค่ะ
7. ครับ
8. ค่ะ

ENGLISH

1. Yes? (Response when someone's trying to get attention from you for a male speaker)
2. Yes? (Response when someone's trying to get attention from you for a female speaker)
3. I'm sorry. (male)
4. I'm sorry. (female)
5. It's no problem. (male)

CONT'D OVER

6. It's no problem. (female)

7. Response to "Excuse me." (male)

8. Response to "Excuse me." (female)

ROMANIZATION

1. khráp

2. khá

3. khăaw-thôot ná khráp.

4. khăaw-thôot ná khá.

5. mâi-bpen-rai khráp.

6. mâi-bpen-rai khâ.

7. khráp

8. khâ

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ขอโทษ	*khăaw-thôot*	Excuse me. / Sorry.	Expression

นะ	*ná*	particle used to soften speech	particle
คะ	*khá*	a polite ending particle for female speakers for questions and requests	particle
ค่ะ	*khâ*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is female	particle
ครับ	*khráp*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is a male	particle
ขอ	*khăaw*	to request	verb
ไม่เป็นไร	*mâi-bpen-rai*	It's okay. / No problem.	Expression

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ผมขอโทษ *phŏm khăaw-thôot.* "I'm sorry."	ขอโทษครับ คุณรู้ไหมว่าสถานีตำรวจอยู่ที่ไหน *khăaw-thôot khráp, khun rúu măi wâa sà-thăa-nii-dtam-rùuat yùu thîi-năi.* "Excuse me, do you know where the police station is?"

ขอโทษค่ะ *khăaw-thôot khâ.* "Excuse me." (Use when you want to get someone's attention.)	ขอโทษค่ะ *khăaw-thôot khâ.* "Excuse me." (Use when you want to apologize.)
คุณเป็นคนที่ไหนนะครับ *khun bpen khon thîi-năi ná khráp.* "Where are you from, again?"	อย่าลืมบันทึกข่าวคืนนี้นะคะ *yàa luuem ban-thúek khàao khuuen níi ná khá* "Don't forget to record tonight's news."
ไปก่อนนะครับ *bpai gàawn ná khráp.* "I'm going now."	อย่าลืมบันทึกข่าวคืนนี้นะคะ *yàa luuem ban-thúek khàao khuuen níi ná khá* "Don't forget to record tonight's news."
ดิฉันเป็นครูค่ะ *dì-chăn bpen khruu khâ* "I'm a teacher."	เจอกันใหม่พรุ่งนี้ สวัสดีค่ะ *jooe gan mài phrûng-níi sà-wàt-dii khâ* "See you again tomorrow. Good-bye."
ขอบคุณมากค่ะ *khàawp-khun mâak khâ* "Thank you very much."	สบายดีไหมครับ *sà-baai-dii măi khráp* "How are you?"
สวัสดีครับ ไม่ได้เจอกันตั้งนาน *sà-wàt-dii khráp mâi-dâi jooe gan dtâng-naan* "Hello! Long time no see!"	ไม่เป็นไรครับ *mâi-bpen-rai khráp* "No problem."
ผมเป็นนักวิจัยครับ *phŏm bpen nák-wí-jai khráp* "I am a researcher."	ขอกาแฟหนึ่งถ้วย *khăaw gaa-faae nùeng thûuai.* "One coffee please."

ไม่เป็นไรครับ

mâi-bpen-rai khráp

"No problem."

GRAMMAR

In today's lesson, we'll cover phrases we use for apologizing. Now, as you haven't quite mastered Thai, it's probably very prudent to go over the phrases for apologizing as they just might come in handy.

We'll start with the word "sorry," which is *khăaw-thôot*. Let's break it down by syllable. *khăaw thôot*. The word *khăaw* means "ask for," followed by *thôot*, which means "punishment." However, adding these words together doesn't make it mean "asking for punishment" but rather "asking for forgiveness." Now, do you remember the word we add to make it more polite? And the word we add to make it sound smoother? Let's add those words in to the phrase. Now, to say "I'm sorry" in Thai, for women, we say *khăaw-thôot ná khá*. For men, we say *khăaw-thôot ná khráp*.

This phrase is a common phrase to say "excuse me" and "I'm sorry." You may use this phrase when you need to get attention from someone. You can use this phrase when you hurt someone or even when you need a moment for yourself.

Now, what if someone says this to you? In the case that someone uses this expression toward you, the proper response depends on the situation. If the person uses this phrase to apologize, the best phrase to respond is *mâi-bpen-rai*. Let's break it down by syllable: *mâi bpen rai*. Remember to say it with politeness. Therefore, for women, we say *mâi-bpen-rai khá*, and for men, we say *mâi-bpen-rai khráp*.

How about a response for "Excuse me?" Usually Thai people respond with a "yes." For women, there are two ways to say it. The first one is *khâ* and the second one is *khá*. Don't get confused by the tone. For the first one, the tone is going down, and for the second one, the tone is going up. We use *khâ*, the first tone, as an expression for an agreement. If someone says "excuse me" as he or she needs a moment to himself or herself, you should say *khâ* as you agree. We use the second one, *khá*, to respond when someone is trying to get attention from you. You say *khá* as a question. Now, with the same situation, men can just say *khráp* to respond to both. You lucky guys!

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip

When saying "I'm sorry," it is highly recommended that you should do a *Wai* when you say *khăaw-thôot* to mean "I'm sorry." to those who are older or higher in rank than you. There are a several forms of *Wai*, however, the one that is used when saying *khăaw-thôot* should be performed by placing your palms together, bowing your head down and letting your fingertips touch the tip of the nose.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #11 Thai Restaurant—How Many People?

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
3 Romanization
4 Vocabulary
4 Sample Sentences
5 Grammar
6 Cultural Insight

11

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. สวัสดีค่ะ กี่ท่านคะ
2. หนึ่ง
3. สอง
4. สาม
5. สี่
6. ห้า
7. เชิญนั่งค่ะ
8. เชิญนั่งครับ
9. สองค่ะ
10. สองครับ

ENGLISH

1. Hello./Welcome. How many people? (female)
2. one

CONT'D OVER

3. two

4. three

5. four

6. five

7. Take a seat. (female)

8. Take a seat. (male)

9. Table for two, please. (female)

10. Table for two, please. (male)

ROMANIZATION

1. sà-wàt-dii khâ. gìi thân khá.

2. nùeng

3. sǎawng

4. sǎam

5. sìi

6. hâa

CONT'D OVER

7. chooen nâng khâ.

8. chooen nâng khráp.

9. săawng khâ.

10. săawng khráp.

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
เชิญ	*chooen*	to invite	verb
หนึ่ง	*nùeng*	one (1)	Noun
สอง	*săawng*	two (2)	Noun
สาม	*săam*	three (3)	Noun
สี่	*sìi*	four (4)	Noun
ห้า	*hâa*	five (5)	Verb
กี่	*gìi*	how much, how many	adjective
ท่าน	*thân*	you, he, she, person (polite)	Verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

เชิญนั่งค่ะ *chooen nâng khâ.* "Please sit down."	ขอกาแฟหนึ่งถ้วย *khăaw gaa-faae nùeng thûuai.* "One coffee please."
ขอตั๋วไปพัทยาสองใบ *khăaw dtŭua bpai phát-thá-yaa săawng bai* "Two tickets to Pattaya please."	ผมอยากซื้อหนังสือสามเล่มนี้ *phŏm yàak súue năng-sŭue săam lêm níi* "I want to buy these three books."
ดิฉันจะพักอยู่ที่กรุงเทพฯ สี่วัน *dì-chăn jà phák yùu thîi grung-thêep sìi wan.* "I'll stay in Bangkok for four days."	เขารออยู่ที่สนามบินห้าชั่วโมง *khăo raaw yùu thîi sà-năam-bin hâa chûua-moong.* "He waited five hours in the airport."
ลูกสาวของคุณอายุกี่ขวบ *lûuk-săao khăawng khun aa-yú gìi khùuap* "How old is your daughter?"	ทุกท่าน เชิญทางนี้ค่ะ *thúk-thân chooen thaang níi khâ.* "Everyone, this way please."

GRAMMAR

There is a wide variety of Thai food, and your job as a visitor is to eat as much of as many things as possible! However, before you start eating, you have to get the table! So in today's lesson, we'll cover getting a table in a restaurant. As for ordering...well, you'll just have to hang on until next week.

When entering a restaurant in Thailand, you will be greeted with *sà-wàt-dii khâ. gìi thân khá.* Of course, the first phrase, *sà-wàt-dii khâ*, is "hello" for females. And the second phrase, *gìi thân khá*, means "How many people?"

Since you already know the first phrase, I'm going to break the second phrase down for you: *gìi thân khá.* The first word, *gìi*, means "how many" and is followed by *thân*, which means "person" in a formal way. Of course, we add *khá* to make it more polite. If you notice, I am introducing you to the phrases for women because most of the time, women will be the ones greeting you at the restaurant. So *sà-wàt-dii khâ. gìi thân khá.* means "Hello, how many

people, sir?"

In some restaurants, you might hear people say "Please take a seat" instead of asking you how many people. To say "Please take a seat" in Thai is *chooen nâng khâ* or *chooen nâng khráp*. The word *chooen* means "please" as an invitation, and it is followed by *nâng*, which means "sit." Adding them together with *khâ* or *khráp*, this phrase means "Please take a seat."

So how should you respond to these phrases? Well, if the person says *chooen nâng khâ* or *chooen nâng khráp*, you may go take a seat at any available table. But if the person asks you *gìi thân khá* then the answer is simple. Just say the number then end with *khâ* or *khráp*.

Now I'm going to tell you how to count from one to five. Ready? Let's go. *nùeng*, *săawng*, *săam*, *sìi*, *hâa*. *Nùeng* is "one," *săawng* is "two," *săam* is "three," *sìi* is "four," and *hâa* is "five." So if you would like a table for "two," you may say *săawng khâ* or *săawng khráp*. If you would like a table for "four," you say *sìii khâ* or *sìi khráp*. Got it?

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip

Counting With Fingers From One To Five If you find it difficult for you to memorize numbers in Thai so that you can tell a restaurant staff how many seats you want. One easier way is showing your fingers for how many to want to the staff. In Thailand, A lone index finger means one. Holding up an index finger and a middle finger means two. Holding up an index finger, a middle finger and a ring finger mean three. Holding up an index finger, a middle finger, a ring finger and a little finger means four. And of course, holding up all five fingers means number five!

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #12 Thai Restaurant: Smoking or Non-smoking?

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
3 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
4 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

12

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ขอนั่งตรงนี้ได้ไหมครับ
2. ขอนั่งตรงนี้ได้ไหมคะ
3. ขอนั่งตรงนั้นได้ไหมครับ
4. ขอนั่งตรงนั้นได้ไหมคะ
5. ไม่สูบบุหรี่นะครับ
6. ไม่สูบบุหรี่นะคะ
7. สูบบุหรี่นะครับ
8. สูบบุหรี่นะคะ

ENGLISH

1. May we sit here? (male)
2. May we sit here? (female)
3. May we sit there? (male)
4. May we sit there? (female)
5. Non-smoking seat, please. (male)

CONT'D OVER

6. Non-smoking seat, please. (female)

7. Smoking seat, please. (male)

8. Smoking seat, please. (female)

ROMANIZATION

1. khăaw nâng dtrong níi dâai măi khráp.

2. khăaw nâng dtrong níi dâai măi khá.

3. khăaw nâng dtrong nán dâai măi khráp.

4. khăaw nâng dtrong nán dâai măi khá.

5. mâi sùup bù-rìi ná khráp.

6. mâi sùup bù-rìi ná khá..

7. sùup bù-rìi ná khráp.

8. sùup bù-rìi ná khá.

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
นั่ง	*nâng*	to sit	Verb
ตรงนี้	*dtrong-níi*	here	adverb

ตรงนั้น	*dtrong-nán*	there	adverb
สูบ	*sùup*	to smoke	verb
บุหรี่	*bù-rìi*	cigarette	noun
ขอ	*khăaw*	to request	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ผมอยากนั่งใกล้เขา *phŏm yàak nâng glâi khăo* "I want to sit close to her."	ดิฉันควรจะนั่งตรงไหน *dì-chăn khuuan jà nâng dtrong năi* "Where should I sit?"
ดิฉันไม่เคยมาตรงนี้มาก่อน *dì-chăn mâi khooei maa dtrong-níi maa gàawn* "I haven't been here before."	เขาไม่อยากไปตรงนั้น *khăo mâi yàak bpai dtrong-nán* "He doesn't want to go there."
ผมไม่สูบบุหรี่ *phŏm mâi sùup bù-rìi.* "I don't smoke."	ผมไม่สูบบุหรี่ *phŏm mâi sùup bù-rìi.* "I don't smoke."
ขอกาแฟหนึ่งถ้วย *khăaw gaa-faae nùeng thûuai.* "One coffee please."	

GRAMMAR

Today we'll cover getting a table in the section of the restaurant you want. In Thailand, smoking in restaurants is, although illegal, still accepted. However, there are occasions when you want to request a non-smoking seat. Or, perhaps you would like a smoking seat. Either

way, let's cover that first.

Now remember, when you enter a restaurant, you'll hear *sà-wàt-dii khâ. gìi thân khá?* After you respond with the number of the party, you may say one of the following phrases.

To request a "non-smoking seat," you say *mâi sùup bù-rìi*. Let's break it down by syllable:*mâi sùup bù-rìi*. Remember, for women it is *mâi sùup bù-rìi ná khá*, and for men it is *mâi sùup bù-rìi ná khráp*. The first word, *mâi*, means "no" or "not," followed by *sùup*, which means "smoke." The last word, *bù-rìi*, means "cigarette." After adding *ná khá* and *ná khráp* as a polite way of asking, all together this phrase means "No smoking cigarettes, please."

Now, if you prefer "smoking," simply remove the word *mâi* and you are good to go. That means when you are asking for a "smoking" seat in the restaurant, women say *sùup bù-rìi ná khá* and men say *sùup bù-rìi ná khráp*. Got it?

Now, secondhand smoke may not be the only obstacle on your path toward the perfect meal, as you may not like the location of the table selected for you. Perhaps you want a table by the window or one not next to the kitchen door! In Thai, "May we sit there, please?" is *khăaw nâng dtrong nán dâai măi.* The first word, *khăaw*, means "asking for," followed by *nâng*, which means "sit." The third word, *dtrong nán*, means "there," and *dâai măi* means "can." Together, this phrase is equivalent to "May I" or "May we sit there, please?" Don't forget that women say *khăaw nâng dtrong nán dâai măi khá*, and men say *khăaw nâng dtrong nán dâai măi kkráp.* You may use the same format to say "May we sit here, please?" by replacing *dtrong nán* with *dtrong níi*, which means "here." Therefore, "May we sit here, please" in Thai is *khăaw nâng dtrong níi dâai măi khá* and *khăaw nâng dtrong níi dâai măi khráp.*

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip

Make sure you check for a No Smoking sign: For those who smoke, make sure you notice a no-smoking sign before entering into any area because in Thailand, you are subject to a fine if you smoke inside places like schools, hospitals, or even pubs or night clubs for example.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #13
Thai Restaurant: At The Table

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

13

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. เอาอันนี้ค่ะ
2. เอาอันนี้ครับ
3. มีจานไหนแนะนำไหมคะ
4. มีจานไหนแนะนำไหมครับ
5. ไม่เผ็ดนะคะ
6. ไม่เผ็ดนะครับ

ENGLISH

1. I'd like to have this, please. (female)
2. I'd like to have this, please. (male)
3. Do you have any recommended dishes? (female)
4. Do you have any recommended dishes? (male)
5. Not spicy, please. (female)
6. Not spicy, please. (male)

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. ao an níi khâ.
2. ao an níi khráp.
3. mii jaan năi náe-nam măi khá.
4. mii jaan năi náe-nam măi khráp.
5. mâi phèt ná khá.
6. mâi phèt ná khráp.

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
อันนี้	*an-níi*	this	pronoun
ไม่	*mâi*	not	adverb
เผ็ด	*phèt*	spicy	Adjective
แนะนำ	*náe-nam*	to recommend	verb
มี	*mii*	to have	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

อันนี้ราคาเท่าไหร่ *an-níi raa-khaa thâo-rài.* "How much does this one cost?"	อันนี้เรียกว่าอะไร *an-níi rîiak wâa à-rai.* "What is this called?"

ผู้หญิงไม่ชอบสิ่งที่เธอได้ยิน *phûu-yĭng mâi châawp sìng thîi thooe dâai yin* "The woman dislikes what she hears."	แฟนหนุ่มของดิฉันชอบอาหารเผ็ดมากๆ *faaen nûm khăawng dì-chăn châawp aa-hăan phèt mâak mâak.* "My boyfriend loves spicy food."
คุณแนะนำโรงแรมไหนคะ *khun náe-nam roong-raaem năi khá.* "Which hotel do you recommend?"	ชาวบ้านคนนั้นมีหมูหกสิบตัว *chaao-bâan khon nán mii mŭu hòk-sìp dtuua* "That villager has sixty pigs."

GRAMMAR

Today, we'll cover getting by at the table. After you've found your seat at the restaurant, now it's time to get a hold of the staff.

To get attention from the waitstaff, simply say *khăaw thôot ná khá* for women and *khăaw thôot ná khráp* for men. This phrase is equivalent to "excuse me" in English. We learned this phrase in an earlier lesson about how to apologize. It is very common to use this phrase to get attention from the waitstaff in any kind of restaurant in Thailand.

Once the waiter or waitress comes to your table, you may order your food by pointing at the item you'd like to have on the menu and saying *ao an níi khâ* for women or *ao an níi khráp* for men. The first word, *ao*, means "would like," followed by *an níi*, which means "this one," and we add *khâ* or *khráp* to make it more polite. Therefore, *ao an níi khâ* and *ao an níi khráp* is equivalent to "I'd like to have this one, please."

You may ask for the recommendation from the waitstaff by saying *mii jaan năi náe-nam măi.* Remember to add *khá* and *khráp* to make it more polite. Therefore, women say *mii jaan năi náe-nam măi khá.* While men say *mii jaan năi náe-nam măi khráp.* The first word, *mii*, means "have," and it is followed by *jaan*, which means "dish." The third word, *năi*, means "any" or "where," while *náe-nam* means "recommend." The last word, *măi*, indicates that this phrase is a question. Therefore, this phrase is equivalent to the English phrase "Do you have any recommended dishes?" Keep in mind that it is very common in the Thai language to leave the word for "I" in the phrase.

In my opinion, it is wise to go for the recommended dishes because you will find more interesting Thai dishes than you may find in the Thai restaurants in your own town. However, there is one more phrase that you will find useful. As Thai dishes are mostly spicy and hot. You may prefer non-spicy for the sake of your sensitive stomach. Women should say *mâi phèt*

ná khá, while men say *mâi phèt ná khráp*. This phrase means "Not spicy, please."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip 1

Thai food has a reputation for being spicy. Many people find it delicious, but some say it is too spicy. It is wise to always ask whether it is a spicy dish, and if you don't like spicy food, make sure you mention your preference when you order the food.

Quick Tip Number 2

The portions in Thailand are not as large as in America. So Americans shouldn't be afraid to try many dishes in the restaurant.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #14
Thai Restaurant: Table Etiquette

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

14

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. เชิญค่ะ
2. เชิญครับ
3. อร่อยไหมคะ
4. อร่อยไหมครับ
5. อร่อยค่ะ
6. อร่อยครับ

ENGLISH

1. Please. (female)
2. Please. (male)
3. Is it delicious? (female)
4. Is it delicious? (male)
5. Yes, it is delicious. (female)
6. Yes, it is delicious. (male)

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. chooen khâ
2. chooen khráp
3. à-ràwy măi khá
4. à-ràwy măi khráp
5. à-ràwy khâ
6. à-ràwy khráp

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
อร่อย	*à-ràwy*	delicious	Adjective
ไหม	*măi*	a particle indicating a yes/no question	particle
ครับ	*khráp*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is a male	particle
คะ	*khá*	a polite ending particle for female speakers for questions and requests	particle

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ผู้หญิงกำลังเพลิดเพลินกับพิซซ่าที่อร่อย *phûu-yĭng gam-lang phlôoet-phlooen gàp phít-sâa thîi à-ràwy* "The woman is enjoying delicious pizza."	สบายดีไหมครับ *sà-baai-dii măi khráp* "How are you?"
ช่วยพูดอีกครั้งได้ไหม *chûuai phûut ìik khráng dâai măi.* "Could you say that one more time?"	สบายดีไหมครับ *sà-baai-dii măi khráp* "How are you?"
สวัสดีครับ ไม่ได้เจอกันตั้งนาน *sà-wàt-dii khráp mâi-dâi jooe gan dtâng-naan* "Hello! Long time no see!"	ไม่เป็นไรครับ *mâi-bpen-rai khráp* "No problem."
ผมเป็นนักวิจัยครับ *phŏm bpen nák-wí-jai khráp* "I am a researcher."	อย่าลืมบันทึกข่าวคืนนี้นะคะ *yàa luuem ban-thúek khàao khuuen níi ná khá* "Don't forget to record tonight's news."

GRAMMAR

Table manners are a must wherever you go! In this lesson, we'll cover some basic table etiquette when sitting down for a meal in Thailand.

When it comes to mealtime, Thai people typically do not say anything formal to start things off. While table etiquette is somewhat crucial in Thai culture, saying something before a meal is not at all important. However, there is a chance that you will hear people say a few words before starting the meal. One of these is *chooen*, which means "please" as an invitation. As usual, we add *khâ* and *khráp* to make it more polite. Therefore, women may say *chooen khâ* while men may say *chooen khráp*. You may use this phrase as an invitation to start having a meal, take a seat, or come into the house.

Another phrase that you may hear during a meal is a question of whether or not you like the meal. To ask "Is the meal good?" in Thai, say *à-ràwy măi.* Don't forget to sound polite by adding *khâ* or *khráp* at the end of the phrase. Therefore, women say *à-ràwy măi khá.* while men say *à-ràwy măi khráp.* Let's break it down by syllable: *à-ràwy măi khá*. *à-ràwy măi khráp*.

The first word, *à-ràwy*, means "delicious," and is followed by *măi*, which indicates the question. *Khá* and *khráp* make the phrase more polite and formal. Together, this phrase is equivalent to the English phrase "Is it delicious?"

To respond to this question, you may say *à-ràwy khâ* or *à-ràwy khráp* with the meaning of "Yes, it is delicious." Now you may be wondering, what if it is not delicious? Well, it is important to remember that even though your meal is not delicious, you might not want to say it out loud. Thai people have a way to deal with this awkward situation. If your meal is not so good and someone asks what you think, you may politely say *à-ràwy khâ* or *à-ràwy khráp*. I know what you are thinking. Now you are wondering, are you asking me to tell a lie? Well, not really, because while you say it is delicious, your face will tell that it is not quite the truth. And that's a better way of saying "No, it is not delicious" than saying it out loud! And believe me, Thai people will understand that. And trust me, there is a huge chance that Thai people will ask you whether you like what you are eating!

There are a few things you might like to remember. Thai use both a fork and a spoon at almost every meal, and the spoon is not limited to just eating soup. Actually, the spoon is the major tableware for your meal. You use a spoon for rice, soup, an appetizer, the main course, and everything else. Your fork is only an accompanying tableware that helps you get your food into your spoon. Using your fork as the major tableware is considered not very polite in Thailand.

Another thing to remember is this: don't scoop a lot of food onto your plate. Take only some food at a time. When you finish what you have on your plate, you may take some more. If you take a lot of food onto your plate all at once, well, you might appear to be greedy in Thai culture. And that's not very nice.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip: Another Reason to Say How Wonderful the Food Is

It is okay not to say the food is delicious. But as I mentioned earlier, Thai people are very polite. What could happen is when you say the food is not delicious, Thai people might bring you a whole new meal set to compensate you. So it is wise to say the food is delicious with a hint telling them that you are not telling the truth.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #15
Thai Restaurant: Getting the Bill

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
3 Romanization
4 Vocabulary
4 Sample Sentences
5 Grammar
6 Cultural Insight

15

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ขอโทษนะคะ
2. ขอโทษนะครับ
3. เช็คบิลด้วยค่ะ
4. เช็คบิลด้วยครับ
5. อร่อยมากค่ะ
6. อร่อยมากครับ
7. ใช้บัตรเครดิตได้ไหมคะ
8. ใช้บัตรเครดิตได้ไหมครับ
9. ขอบคุณค่ะ
10. ขอบคุณครับ

ENGLISH

1. Excuse me. (female)
2. Excuse me. (male)

CONT'D OVER

3. Check for my bill, please. (female)

4. Check for my bill, please. (male)

5. Very delicious. (female)

6. Very delicious. (male)

7. Can I use a credit card? (female)

8. Can I use a credit card? (for men)

9. Thank you. (female)

10. Thank you. (male)

ROMANIZATION

1. khăaw thôot ná khá

2. khăaw thôot ná khráp

3. chék bin dûuai khâ

4. chék bin dûuai khráp

5. à-ràwy mâak khâ

6. à-ràay mâak khráp

CONT'D OVER

7. chái bàt-khree-dìt dâai măi khá

8. chái bàt-khree-dìt dâai măi khráp

9. khàawp-khun khâ

10. khàawp-khun khráp

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ขอโทษ	*khăaw-thôot*	Excuse me. / Sorry.	Expression
อร่อย	*à-ràwy*	delicious	Adjective
มาก	*mâak*	very	adverb
บัตรเครดิต	*bàt-khree-dìt*	credit card	Noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ผมขอโทษ *phŏm khăaw-thôot.* "I'm sorry."	ขอโทษครับ คุณรู้ไหมว่าสถานีตำรวจอยู่ที่ไหน *khăaw-thôot khráp, khun rúu măi wâa sà-thăa-nii-dtam-rùuat yùu thîi-năi.* "Excuse me, do you know where the police station is?"

ขอโทษค่ะ *khăaw-thôot khâ.* "Excuse me." (Use when you want to get someone's attention.)	ขอโทษค่ะ *khăaw-thôot khâ.* "Excuse me." (Use when you want to apologize.)
ผู้หญิงกำลังเพลิดเพลินกับพิซซ่าที่อร่อย *phûu-yĭng gam-lang phlôoet-phlooen gàp phít-sâa thîi à-ràwy* "The woman is enjoying delicious pizza."	ผมตื่นเต้นมากที่ได้เจอเธอเมื่อวาน *phŏm dtùuen-dtên mâak thîi dâai jooe thooe mûuea-waan* "I was very excited to see her yesterday."
ขอบคุณมากนะคะ *khàawp-khun mâak ná khá* "Thank you very much."	เด็กสาวชอบสุนัขมาก *dèk-săao châawp sù-nák mâak* "The young girl really likes the puppies."

ดิฉันสามารถจ่ายโดยบัตรเครดิตได้ไหมคะ
dì-chăn săa-mâat jàai dooi bàt-khee-dìt dâai măi khá

"Can I pay by a credit card?"

GRAMMAR

Now that you've finished your meal, you may ask for a bill from the waitstaff. In Thai, to say "Check, please," we say *chék bin dûuai*. As usual, we add *khâ* and *khráp* at the end of the phrase to make it more polite. Therefore, women say *chék bin dûuai khâ* and men say *chék bin dûuai khráp*. As you may notice, some of the words in this phrase are very close to the English words. That's because the Thai language sometimes borrows words from the English language. *Chék bin* is actually from "check" and "bill" in English but in a slightly different pronunciation. Therefore, the first word, *chék bin*, is actually "asking for bill," followed by *dûuai*, which means "all together," and we add *khâ* or *khráp* to make it more polite. This phrase is then equivalent to the English phrase "Check for my bill, please."

Now if you'd like to tell them how good the food is or if you're eating with someone and you want to let them know how good you feel the food is, you can say *à-ràwy mâak khâ* or *à-ràwy mâak khráp*. We've learned this phrase already in the previous lesson about table etiquette.

Now I added the word *mâak*, which means "very." As *khâ* and *khráp* indicate, *à-ràwy mâak khâ* is for women and *à-ràwy mâak khráp* is for men. Therefore, this phrase means "very delicious."

Don't forget to say "thank you." We have already learned this phrase in an earlier lesson. It's *khàawp-khun khâ* for women and *khàawp-khun khráp* for men.

In Thailand, it is not necessary to leave a tip for waitstaff. However, some small change is always a good encouragement for those who work in a service business. Some high-end restaurants might include a service charge already in your bill, so please look at your bill before you decide to leave a tip or some small change.

One last useful phrase has to do with credit cards. In Thai, women say *chái bàt-khree-dìt dâai mǎi khá.* While men say *chái bàt-khree-dìt dâai mǎi khráp.* The first word, *chái*, means "use," and is followed by *bàt*, which means "card." The third word is borrowed from the English word "credit," and it is followed by *dâai mǎi*, which means "can" as a question. We add *khá* and *khráp* to make this phrase more polite. Therefore, this phrase is equivalent to the English phrase "Can I use a credit card?"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip

If you are in a hotel restaurant or some fancy restaurant, it is safe to use a credit card. But if you are in some small restaurant down the street, you might want to think about it again before handing your credit card to the waitstaff. Like many other countries, fraud can occur anywhere, so be very careful.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #16 Counting from One to Ten in Thai

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
3 Romanization
4 Vocabulary
5 Sample Sentences
6 Grammar
7 Cultural Insight

16

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. หนึ่ง
2. สอง
3. สาม
4. สี่
5. ห้า
6. หก
7. เจ็ด
8. แปด
9. เก้า
10. สิบ
11. หนึ่งคัน
12. หนึ่งคน
13. สามจาน
14. สองอัน

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. one
2. two
3. three
4. four
5. five
6. six
7. seven
8. eight
9. nine
10. ten
11. one car
12. one person
13. three dishes
14. two things

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. nùeng
2. săawng
3. săam
4. sìi
5. hâa
6. hòk
7. jèt
8. bpàaet
9. gâao
10. sìp
11. nùeng khan
12. nùeng khon
13. săam jaan
14. săawng an

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class

หนึ่ง	*nùeng*	one (1)	Noun
เก้า	*gâao*	nine (9)	Noun
แปด	*bpàaet*	eight (8)	Noun
เจ็ด	*jèt*	seven (7)	Noun
หก	*hòk*	six (6)	Noun
ห้า	*hâa*	five (5)	Verb
สี่	*sìi*	four (4)	Noun
สาม	*săam*	three (3)	Noun
สอง	*săawng*	two (2)	Noun
สิบ	*sìp*	ten (10)	Noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ขอกาแฟหนึ่งถ้วย *khăaw gaa-faae nùeng thûuai.* "One coffee please."	เก้าลบแปดเท่ากับหนึ่ง *gâao lóp bpàaet thâo gàp nùeng.* "Nine minus eight equals one."
เก้าลบแปดเท่ากับหนึ่ง *gâao lóp bpàaet thâo gàp nùeng.* "Nine minus eight equals one."	ผู้ชายคนนั้นดื่มเบียร์เจ็ดขวด *phûu-chaai khon nán dùuem biia jèt khùuat.* "That man drank seven bottles of beer."
แมวหกตัวกำลังเล่นกัน *maaeo hòk dtuua gam-lang lên gan.* "Six cats are playing together."	เขารออยู่ที่สนามบินห้าชั่วโมง *khăo raaw yùu thîi sà-năam-bin hâa chûua-moong.* "He waited five hours in the airport."

ดิฉันจะพักอยู่ที่กรุงเทพฯ สี่วัน *dì-chăn jà phák yùu thîi grung-thêep sìi wan.* "I'll stay in Bangkok for four days."	ผมอยากซื้อหนังสือสามเล่มนี้ *phŏm yàak súue năng-sŭue săam lêm níi* "I want to buy these three books."
ขอตั๋วไปพัทยาสองใบ *khăaw dtŭua bpai phát-thá-yaa săawng bai* "Two tickets to Pattaya please."	พวกเขากินกับข้าวสิบอย่าง *phûuak-khăo kin gàp-khâao sìp yàang.* "They ate ten different kinds of food."

GRAMMAR

This lesson is very straightforward, as we're going to cover counting one through ten. Let's jump right in.

Thai	**"English"**
nùeng	"one"
săawng	"two"
săam	"three"
sìi	"four"
hâa	"five"
hòk	"six"
jèt	"seven"
bpàaet	"eight"
gâao	"nine"
sìp	"ten"

Counting in Thai is not complicated, as Thai has no singular or plural forms. However, we use classifiers in representing an object when counting instead of a noun. To make it easier to understand, let's look at an example.

The word for "car" is *rót*. However, to say "one car" in Thai, we say *nùeng khan*. The first word, *nùeng*, which means "one," is followed by *khan*, which is a classifier for "car." Therefore, this phrase means "one car."

In some cases, the noun and the classifier are the same word. For example, both the noun and the classifier for "person" is *khon*. To say "one person" in Thai, we say *nùeng khon*.

Thai has particular classifiers for each of every object. And because of this, I'm going to teach you a few more words that you will find very useful.

To say "two items," we say *sǎawng an*. The word *an* is the classifier of an "item." You may use this when you buy some souvenirs from a store.

Another useful classifier is "dish." To say "three dishes" is *sǎam jaan*. Of course, this phrase is very useful when you order food at the restaurant.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip

Using the wrong classifier could give Thai people a big question mark. It is such a difficult thing about the Thai language that even Thai people often get the classifier wrong. Don't be afraid to use the word *an* as a classifier for things when you don't know the right classifier. Thai people will correct you after they find out what you are trying to count. This is a good way to learn a new classifier.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #17 Counting to One Hundred in Thai

CONTENTS

2 Thai
3 English
5 Romanization
7 Vocabulary
8 Sample Sentences
11 Grammar
14 Cultural Insight

17

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. สิบเอ็ด
2. สิบสอง
3. สิบสาม
4. สิบสี่
5. สิบห้า
6. สิบหก
7. สิบเจ็ด
8. สิบแปด
9. สิบเก้า
10. ยี่สิบ
11. ยี่สิบเอ็ด
12. ยี่สิบสอง
13. ยี่สิบสาม
14. ยี่สิบสี่

CONT'D OVER

15. ยี่สิบห้า

16. ยี่สิบหก

17. ยี่สิบเจ็ด

18. ยี่สิบแปด

19. ยี่สิบเก้า

20. สามสิบ

21. สี่สิบ

22. ห้าสิบ

23. หกสิบ

24. เจ็ดสิบ

25. แปดสิบ

26. เก้าสิบ

27. หนึ่งร้อย

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. eleven
2. twelve
3. thirteen
4. fourteen
5. fifteen
6. sixteen
7. seventeen
8. eighteen
9. nineteen
10. twenty
11. twenty-one
12. twenty-two
13. twenty-three
14. twenty-four
15. twenty-five

CONT'D OVER

16. twenty-six

17. twenty-seven

18. twenty-eight

19. twenty-nine

20. thirty

21. forty

22. fifty

23. sixty

24. seventy

25. eighty

26. ninety

27. one hundred

ROMANIZATION

1. sìp-èt

2. sìp-sǎawng

CONT'D OVER

3. sìp-sǎam

4. sìp-sìi

5. sìp-hâa

6. sìp-hòk

7. sìp-jèt

8. sìp-bpàaet

9. sìp-gâao

10. yîi-sìp

11. yîi-sìp-èt

12. yîi-sìp-sǎawng

13. yîi-sìp-sǎam

14. yîi-sìp-sìi

15. yîi-sìp-hâa

16. yîi-sìp-hòk

17. yîi-sìp-jèt

CONT'D OVER

18. yîi-sìp-bpàaet

19. yîi-sìp-gâao

20. săam-sìp

21. sìi-sìp

22. hâa-sìp

23. hòk-sìp

24. jèt-sìp

25. bpàaet-sìp

26. gâao-sìp

27. nùeng-ráawy

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
สิบเอ็ด	*sìp-èt*	eleven (11)	Noun
ยี่สิบสี่	*yîi- sìp-sìi*	twenty-four (24)	noun
ยี่สิบห้า	*yîi- sìp-hâa*	twenty-five (25)	noun
ยี่สิบเก้า	*yîi- sìp-gâao*	twenty-nine (29)	ีีnoun
สามสิบ	*sàam-sìp*	thirty (30)	noun

สี่สิบ	*sìi-sìp*	forty (40)	noun
ห้าสิบ	*hâa-sìp*	fifty (50)	noun
หกสิบ	*hòk-sìp*	sixty (60)	noun
เจ็ดสิบ	*jèt-sìp*	seventy (70)	noun
แปดสิบ	*bpàaet-sìp*	eighty (80)	noun
เก้าสิบ	*gâo-sìp*	ninety (90)	noun
ยี่สิบสาม	*yîi- sìp-săam*	twenty-three (23)	noun
ยี่สิบสอง	*yîi- sìp-săawng*	twenty-two (22)	Noun
สิบสอง	*sìp-săawng*	twelve (12)	Noun
สิบสาม	*sìp-săam*	thirteen (13)	Noun
สิบสี่	*sìp-sìi*	fourteen (14)	Noun
สิบห้า	*sìp-hâa*	fifteen (15)	Noun
สิบหก	*sìp-hòk*	sixteen (16)	Noun
สิบเจ็ด	*sìp-jèt*	seventeen (17)	Noun
สิบแปด	*sìp-bpàaet*	eighteen (18)	Noun
สิบเก้า	*sìp-gâao*	nineteen (19)	Noun
ยี่สิบ	*yîi-sìp*	twenty (20)	Noun
ยี่สิบเอ็ด	*yîi- sìp-èt*	twenty-one (21)	noun
หนึ่งร้อย	*nùeng-ráawy*	one hundred (100)	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

เจอกันสิบเอ็ดโมง *jooe gan sìp-èt moong.* "Let's meet at eleven o'clock."	มียี่สิบสี่ชั่วโมงในหนึ่งวัน *mii yîi- sìp-sìi chûua-moong nai nùeng wan* "There are twenty-four hours in a day."
รถบัสคันนี้จุผู้โดยสารได้ 25 คน *rót-bát khan níi ju phûu-dooi-săan dâai yîi- sìp-hâa khon* "This bus holds twenty-five passengers."	หลานสาวของดิฉันหนักแค่ 29 กิโลกรัม *lăan-săao khăawn dì-chăn nàk khâe yîi- sìp-gâao gì-loo-gram* "My niece weighs only 29 Kilograms."
ปีนี้ดิฉันจะมีอายุครบสามสิบปี *bpii-níi dì-chăn jà mii aa-yú khróp săam-sìp bpii* "I will turn thirty this year."	คุณแม่ของดิฉันอายุสี่สิบปี *khun mâae khăawng dì-chăn aa-yú sìi-sìp bpii* "My mother is forty years old."
มีทหารห้าสิบนายอยู่ในสนามรบ *mii thá-hăan hâa-sìp naai yùu nai sà-năam-róp* "There are fifty soldiers in a battle field."	ตึกนั้นมีหกสิบชั้น *dtùek nán mii hòk-sìp chán* "That tower has sixty floors."
มีนักเรียนเจ็ดสิบคนอยู่ในหอประชุม *mii nàk-riian jèt-sìp khon yùu nai hăaw-bprà-chum* "There are seventy students in the auditorium."	คุณตาของผมอายุแปดสิบปี *khun-dtaa khăawng phŏm aa-yú bpàaet-sìp bpii.* "My maternal grandfather is eighty years old."
คุณย่าของดิฉันอายุเก้าสิบปี *khun yâa khăawng dì-chăn aa-yú gâo-sìp bpii* "My paternal grandmother is ninety years old."	ดิฉันมีเพียงแค่ยี่สิบสามดอลลาร์ในกระเป๋าสตางค์ *dì-chăn mii phiiang khâae yîi- sìp-săam dawn-lâa nai grà-bpăo sà-dtaang* "I only have twenty-three dollars in my wallet."

พี่สาวของดิฉันมีตุ๊กตายี่สิบสองตัว *phîi-săao khăawng dì-chăn miii dtúk-gà-dtaa yîi-sìp săawng dtuua* "My elder sister has twenty-two dolls."	ดิฉันมีรองเท้าสิบสองคู่ *dì-chăn mii raawng-tháao sìp-săawng khûu.* "I have twelve pairs of shoes."
ผมนั่งเครื่องบินสิบสามชั่วโมงมาจากอเมริกา *phŏm nâng khrûueang-bin sìp-săam chûua-moong maa jàak à-mee-rí-gaa.* "I sat on the airplane for thirteen hours from America."	คุณพ่อมีเสื้อนอกสิบสี่ตัว *khun-phâaw mii sûuea-nâawk sìp-sìi dtuua.* "Father has fourteen business suits."
ผมจะอยู่เมืองไทยนานสิบห้าวัน *phŏm jà yùu muueang-thai naan sìp-hâa wan.* "I will be in Thailand for fifteen days."	คนอเมริกันที่อายุสิบหกปีแล้วขับรถได้ *khon-à-mee-rí-gan thîi aa-yú sìp-hòk bpii láaeo khàp rót dâai* "Americans who are sixteen years old can drive cars."
สิบเจ็ดคูณสิบแปดเท่ากับสามร้อยหก *sìp-jèt khuun sìp-bpàaet thâo gàp săam-ráawy hòk.* "Seventeen times eighteen equals three-hundred six."	สิบเจ็ดคูณสิบแปดเท่ากับสามร้อยหก *sìp-jèt khuun sìp-bpàaet thâo gàp săam-ráawy hòk.* "Seventeen times eighteen equals three-hundred six."
มะนาวกิโลกรัมละสิบเก้าบาท *má-naao gì-loo-gram lá sìp-gâao bàat.* "Limes are nineteen baht per kilogram."	ห้องเรียนห้องนี้มีนักเรียนยี่สิบคน *hâwng-riian hâwng níi mii nák-riian yîi-sìp khon.* "There are twenty students in this classroom."

มีปากกายี่สิบเอ็ดด้ามอยู่บนโต๊ะ *mii bàak-gaa yîi- sìp-èt dâam yùu bon dtó* "There are twenty-one pens on the table."	บ้านหลังนี้มีอายุกว่าหนึ่งร้อยปี *bâan lăng níi mii aa-yú gwàa nùeng-ráawy bpii* "This house is over one hundred years old."

GRAMMAR

Today we're going to continue with counting as we cover eleven to one hundred.

Let's just quickly review one through ten.

Thai	**"English"**
nùeng	"one"
săawng	"two"
săam	"three"
sìi	"four"
hâa	"five"
hòk	"six"
jèt	"seven"
bpàaet	"eight"
gâao	"nine"
sìp	"ten"

Counting from one to ten has helped you learn the numbers already. But adding them up together to create larger numbers requires you to learn some rules.

The first rule is about the number one. When it comes at the last digit, the number "one" or

nùeng changes its name to *èt*.

The second rule is about the number two. From twenty to twenty-nine, the number "two" is not *săawng* but *yîi*.

Let's start with the numbers eleven to nineteen. The common form is the number "ten" followed by the number. For example, "eleven" is *sìp-èt*. It is the number "ten," which is *sìp*, followed by the number "one." But remember the first rule: the number "one" changes its name from *nùeng* to *èt* when it comes as the last digit. Therefore, "eleven" is *sìp-èt*.

Let's count from eleven to nineteen.

Thai	**"English"**
sìp-èt	"eleven"
sìp-săawng	"twelve"
sìp-săam	"thirteen"
sìp-sìi	"fourteen"
sìp-hâa	"fifteen"
sìp-hòk	"sixteen"
sìp-jèt	"seventeen"
sìp-bpàaet	"eighteen"
sìp-gâao	"nineteen"

Now let's get to the numbers twenty to twenty-nine. Keep in mind that the number "two" changes its name from *săawng* to *yîi* in this set of numbers. The common form of the numbers from twenty to ninety-nine is the number, followed by *sìp*, then the number again, if any. For example, the number "twenty" is *yîi-sìp*. It is *yîi* for "two" then followed by *sìp* or "ten," but since there is not any number following, we don't add any more words. Therefore, "twenty" is *yîi-sìp*.

How about "twenty-one?" It is *yîi-sìp-èt*. It is the number "two," which is *yîi,* followed by "ten," which is *sìp*, then the number "one," which is *èt*. Therefore, "twenty-one" is yîi-sìp-èt.

Now let's count to twenty-nine.

Thai	"English"
yîi-sìp-èt	"twenty-one"
yîi-sìp-sǎawng	"twenty-two"
yîi-sìp-sǎam	"twenty-three"
yîi-sìp-sìi	"twenty-four"
yîi-sìp-hâa	"twenty-five"
yîi-sìp-hòk	"twenty-six"
yîi-sìp-jèt	"twenty-seven"
yîi-sìp-bpàaet	"twenty-eight"
yîi-sìp-gâao	"twenty-nine"

Now from thirty to ninety-nine, we follow the same rules we learned earlier. Let's count.

Thai	"English"
sǎam-sìp	"thirty"
sìi-sìp	"forty"
hâa-sìp	"fifty"
hòk-sìp	"sixty"
jèt-sìp	"seventy"
bpàaet-sìp	"eighty"
gâao-sìp	"ninety"

Now let's get to the number one hundred. In Thai, "one hundred" is *nùeng-ráawy*. The first word, *nùeng*, is "one," followed by *ráawy,* which is "a hundred." So *nùeng-ráawy* is "one hundred."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip

Thais tend to shorten words: most Thais tend to omit the word *sìp* when counting numbers from 21-29, 31-39, 41-49, 51-59, 61-69, 71-79, 81-89, 91-99. For example, instead of saying *sìi-sìp-èt* which is "forty-one" in English, they would say *sìi-èt* or for *gâao-sìp-gâao* which is "ninety-nine" in English, they would omit the word *sìp* and say it as *gâao-gâao* instead. If you notice, they just say the number of the tens digit first and immediately followed by the number of the units digit. However, the numbers from 21-29 are exceptional, they say *yîip* instead of *săawng* for its tens digit. For example, "twenty-one" is *yîip-èt* not *săawng-èt* or "twenty-five" is *yîip-hâa* not *săawng-hâa*.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #18 How Much in Thai?

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

18

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. เท่าไหร่คะ
2. เท่าไหร่ครับ
3. อันนี้ราคาเท่าไหร่คะ
4. อันนี้ราคาเท่าไหร่ครับ
5. อันนั้นราคาเท่าไหร่คะ
6. อันนั้นราคาเท่าไหร่ครับ

ENGLISH

1. How much? (female)
2. How much? (male)
3. How much is this? (female)
4. How much is this? (male)
5. How much is that? (female)
6. How much is that? (male)

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. thâo-rài khá

2. thâo-rài khráp

3. an-níi raa-khaa thâo-rài khá

4. an-níi raa-khaa thâo-rài khráp

5. an-nán raa-khaa thâo-rài khá

6. an-nán raa-khaa thâo-rài khráp

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
เท่าไหร่	*thâo-rài*	how much, how many	question
คะ	*khá*	a polite ending particle for female speakers for questions and requests	particle
ครับ	*khráp*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is a male	particle
ราคา	*raa-khaa*	cost, price, to cost	Noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

นี่ราคาเท่าไหร่คะ *nîi raa-khaa thâo-rài khá.* "How much is this?"	อย่าลืมบันทึกข่าวคืนนี้นะคะ *yàa luuem ban-thúek khàao khuuen níi ná khá* "Don't forget to record tonight's news."
สบายดีไหมครับ *sà-baai-dii măi khráp* "How are you?"	สวัสดีครับ ไม่ได้เจอกันตั้งนาน *sà-wàt-dii khráp mâi-dâi jooe gan dtâng-naan* "Hello! Long time no see!"
ไม่เป็นไรครับ *mâi-bpen-rai khráp* "No problem."	ผมเป็นนักวิจัยครับ *phŏm bpen nák-wí-jai khráp* "I am a researcher."

ช่วยลดราคาให้หน่อยได้ไหมคะ
chûuai lót raa-khaa hâi nàwy dâai măi khá.

"Could you please lower the price?"

GRAMMAR

This lesson covers a phrase for all of you shoppers out there, as we'll look at the phrase "How much?" Depending on your shopping habits, this just may be the most useful phrase we ever cover!

In Thai, "How much?" is *thâo-rài khá* for women, while men say *thâo-rài khráp.* The first word, *thâo*, means "equal," followed by *rài*, which we really can't translate but indicates a question. All together, this phrase is equivalent to the English phrase "How much?" While shopping, at a market, or at an eatery, depending on your spending habits, this may be an extremely high-frequency phrase!

The most rudimentary way of using "How much?" is pointing at something while saying *thâo-rài khá* or *thâo-rài khráp.* But let's try another phrase where you ask for a specific item. Let's start with the expression "How much is this?" which in Thai is *an-níi raa-khaa thâo-rài.* Don't forget to be polite by adding *khá* and *khráp*. Therefore, women say *an-níi raa-khaa thâo-rài khá* while men say *an-níi raa-khaa thâo-rài khráp.* The first word, *an ni*, means "this," followed by *raa-khaa*, which means "price." This is followed by *thâo-rài*, which we just learned means

"How much," and we add *khá* or *khráp* to make this phrase more polite. All together, we literally translate this phrase as "This equals how much?" or is equivalent to the English phrase "How much is this?" This is a very common form of asking for the price.

If you want to ask "How much is that?" simply replace the words *an-níi* with *an-nán*. The words *an-nán* mean "that" as we learned in a previous lesson. Therefore, to ask "How much is that?" for women is *an-nán raa-khaa thâo-rài khá,* and men say *an-nán raa-khaa thâo-rài khráp.*

There is a chance you might hear Thai people say it slightly differently when asking for a price. Although *thâo-rài khá* is very common, people might say *raa-khaa thâo-rài khá* and *raa-khaa thâo-rài khráp* too. The meaning is pretty much the same except that we add the word *raa-khaa*, which means "price" in the phrase.

I remember when my French friend came to visit me in Bangkok years ago. I taught him to say this phrase before he went out shopping. He came back in the evening and told me that those people in the market gave him a lot of discounts just because they were so pleased to hear him speak Thai! See? A little bit of language can go such a long way!

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip

You can use *thâo-rài khá* or *thâo-rài khráp* in almost every circumstance, such as in a restaurant, hotel, on the bus, theater, or any place you are expecting to pay.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #19
Please Lower the Price in Thai

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
2 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
4 Cultural Insight

#19

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ลดราคาหน่อยนะคะ
2. ลดราคาหน่อยนะครับ
3. แพงจัง

ENGLISH

1. Lower the price please. (female)
2. Lower the price please. (male)
3. Too expensive.

ROMANIZATION

1. lót raa-khaa nàwy ná khá
2. lót raa-khaa nàwy ná khráp
3. phaaeng jang

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ราคา	*raa-khaa*	cost, price, to cost	Noun

นะ	*ná*	particle used to soften speech	particle
แพง	*phaaeng*	expensive	Adjective
คะ	*khá*	a polite ending particle for female speakers for questions and requests	particle
ครับ	*khráp*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is a male	particle

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ช่วยลดราคาให้หน่อยได้ไหมคะ *chûuai lót raa-khaa hâi nàwy dâai măi khá.* "Could you please lower the price?"	คุณเป็นคนที่ไหนนะครับ *khun bpen khon thîi-năi ná khráp.* "Where are you from, again?"
อย่าลืมบันทึกข่าวคืนนี้นะคะ *yàa luuem ban-thúek khàao khuuen níi ná khá* "Don't forget to record tonight's news."	ไปก่อนนะครับ *bpai gàawn ná khráp.* "I'm going now."
กระเป๋าสตางค์ใบนั้นแพงมากเลย *grá-bpăo-sà-dtaang bai nán phaaeng mâak looei* "That wallet is so expensive."	อย่าลืมบันทึกข่าวคืนนี้นะคะ *yàa luuem ban-thúek khàao khuuen níi ná khá* "Don't forget to record tonight's news."

สบายดีไหมครับ *sà-baai-dii măi khráp* "How are you?"	สวัสดีครับ ไม่ได้เจอกันตั้งนาน *sà-wàt-dii khráp mâi-dâi jooe gan dtâng-naan* "Hello! Long time no see!"
ไม่เป็นไรครับ *mâi-bpen-rai khráp* "No problem."	ผมเป็นนักวิจัยครับ *phŏm bpen nák-wí-jai khráp* "I am a researcher."

GRAMMAR

The phrase we cover in this lesson is related to the phrase "How much?" which in Thai is *thâo-rài* We also introduced "How much is this?" which is *an-níi raa-khaa thâo-rài*, and "How much is that?" which is *an-nán raa-khaa thâo-rài.* Now, when you come to Thailand, one of the most interesting and fun things to do is haggle at the market! So when you're at the market and talking prices, there is another phrase that will come in very handy! That phrase is "Lower the price, please."

In Thai, to say "Lower the price, please" is lót raa-khaa nàwy ná. As always, you would want to sound polite when you say this, so don't forget to add *khá* and *khráp* at the end of the phrase. Therefore, women say *lót raa-khaa nàwy ná khá,* and men say lót raa-khaa nàwy ná khráp. The first word, *lót*, means "lower," followed by *raa-khaa*, which means "price." The third word, *nàwy*, means "little." The next word, *ná*, indicates that this is a request or begging, while we add *khá* or *khráp* to make it more polite. All together, we can literally translate this to English as "Lower the price, please."

Another phrase that we can use in combination with this is "Too expensive," which in Thai is *phaaeng jang*. The first word, *phaaeng*, means "expensive," followed by the word *jang*, which means nothing but is a word that makes the phrase sound smooth. As I mentioned earlier in previous lessons, Thai has so many little words that mean nothing much but serve to complete the phrase. So you might like to remember some of those words and use them in the right phrase.

Now, I don't want to be pessimistic about my country, but there is a chance that you might be asked to pay a greater price if you aren't Thai. This means that there is one price for Thai and another price for non-Thai. By speaking these phrases we just learned in this lesson, it will make Thai people feel more friendly toward you, and perhaps you can get even more of a discount than Thai people.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip 1

Always ask for a lower price when you are buying things at the market. If the price you get doesn't sound so promising, walk ahead a little bit, and then you may find another store selling the same item. Walking around is always a good idea to compare items and prices.

Quick Tip 2

One thing I always do when buying things for which I don't really know the standard price is to ask other buyers around the store. They give you an honest answer and maybe an idea of what they think about the price in this store. But make sure the seller is not around to hear your conversation!

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #20
Thai Currency

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
2 Vocabulary
2 Sample Sentences
3 Grammar
3 Cultural Insight

#20

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. บาท

2. สตางค์

ENGLISH

1. baht (THB)

2. satang

ROMANIZATION

1. bàat

2. sà-dtaang

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
บาท	*bàat*	baht (THB)	noun
สตางค์	*sà-dtaang*	satang	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

เสื้อยืดสีชมพูตัวนั้นราคา 150 บาท *sûuea-yûuet sĭi-chom-phuu dtuua nán raa-khaa ráawy hâa-sìp bàat* "That pink T-shirt is 150 baht."	1 บาทมี 100 สตางค์ *nùeng bàat mii nùeng-ráawy sà-dtaang* "There are 100 satang in 1 baht."

GRAMMAR

In Thailand, the currency is *bàat* with denominations consisting of *sà-dtaang*. One hundred *sà-dtaang* equal one *bàat*. The foreign exchange rate is always fluctuating, so now it is roughly about thirty-two Thai *baht* to one U.S. dollar and roughly about the same amount to one hundred Japanese yen.

Thai currency has both paper bills and coins. For paper currency, we have bills for one thousand, five hundred, one hundred, fifty, and twenty *bàat*. For coins, we have ten, five, one, fifty, and twenty-five sà-dtaang. These are the most common bills and coins, but you may encounter some different forms of bills and coins such as a two-*bàat* coin or a ten-*bàat* bill that we use in the market but that are not very common anymore. Those are coins and bills that have been used in the past or coins and bills that are issued on a special occasion.

Now let's learn a little bit about the Thai bills and coins. On every bill and coin, you will see a picture of a man on the front. He can't be anybody but the world famous King Bhumibol Adulyadej, the present King of Thailand, who is not only the world's longest-reigning monarch but the most beloved King of Thailand. On the back of the bills and coins, there are a variety of images, such as an image of our great kings in the past, the royal palace, and royal temples. Some of them are must-visit spots for tourists.

Now what is a good amount of money to carry? I always suggest that people carry only a few thousand for a shopping trip. The cost of living in Thailand is not expensive considering the average cost of one meal is about one hundred *bàat* per person. You can get a Big Mac with a one hundred *bàat* bill. The cost of a taxi is about fifty *bàat* to two hundred *bàat* for a trip in Bangkok. Almost every large restaurant accepts credit cards. So a few thousand is more than enough. It is wise to carry small bills such as a twenty-*bàat* bill or a one hundred *bàat* bill rather than a big bill like one thousand.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip

The *sà-dtaang* doesn't play much of a role when you pay for things. You will encounter *sà-dtaang* only when you are in a grocery store, restaurant, or place where they calculate tax. And since the unit is so small, most people ignore *sà-dtaang*.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #21 Internet Cafés in Thailand

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

#21

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ขอใช้อินเตอร์เน็ทค่ะ
2. ขอใช้อินเตอร์เน็ทครับ
3. มีวายฟายไหมคะ
4. มีวายฟายไหมครับ
5. ขอยูสเซอร์เนมกับพาสเวิร์ดด้วยค่ะ
6. ขอยูสเซอร์เนมกับพาสเวิร์ดด้วยค่ะครับ

ENGLISH

1. I'd like to use the Internet please. (female)
2. I'd like to use the Internet please. (male)
3. Does this store have Wi-Fi? (female)
4. Does this store have Wi-Fi? (male)
5. Username and password please. (female)
6. Username and password please. (male)

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. khăaw chái in-dtooe-nét khâ
2. khăaw chái in-dtooe-nét khráp
3. mii waai-faai măi khá
4. mii waai-faai măi khráp
5. khăaw yuu-sooe-neem gàp pháat-wòoet dûuai khâ
6. khăaw yuu-sooe-neem gàp pháat-wòoet dûuai khráp

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ขอ	*khăaw*	to request	verb
ใช้	*chái*	to use	verb
อินเตอร์เน็ต	*in-dtooe-nét*	Internet	Noun
คะ	*khá*	a polite ending particle for female speakers for questions and requests	particle
ครับ	*khráp*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is a male	particle

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ขอกาแฟหนึ่งถ้วย *khăaw gaa-faae nùeng thûuai.* "One coffee please."	ขอใช้คอมพิวเตอร์พกพาของคุณสักครู่ได้ไหม *khăaw chái khawm-phíu-dtôoe-phók-phaa khăawng khun sàk-khrûu dâai măi* "Can I use your laptop for a minute?"
ดิฉันชอบท่องอินเตอร์เน็ต *dì-chăn châawp thâawng in-dtooe-nét* "I like surfing the Internet."	อย่าลืมบันทึกข่าวคืนนี้นะคะ *yàa luuem ban-thúek khàao khuuen níi ná khá* "Don't forget to record tonight's news."
สบายดีไหมครับ *sà-baai-dii măi khráp* "How are you?"	สวัสดีครับ ไม่ได้เจอกันตั้งนาน *sà-wàt-dii khráp mâi-dâi jooe gan dtâng-naan* "Hello! Long time no see!"
ไม่เป็นไรครับ *mâi-bpen-rai khráp* "No problem."	ผมเป็นนักวิจัยครับ *phŏm bpen nák-wí-jai khráp* "I am a researcher."

GRAMMAR

In this lesson, we'll learn about a place crucial to your travels in this modern age: the Internet café! In Thai, "Internet café" is as same as the English word but with a slightly different pronunciation, *in-dtooe-nét-gaa-faae*. There are many Internet cafés located throughout Thai cities, so finding one shouldn't be a problem. In this lesson, I'll guide you through what you need to say in an Internet café.

The Internet café in Thailand is a very casual business. There are two major types of Internet cafés. The first one is a proper one where everything is very systematic and it operates as a coffee shop. You can get some good coffee along with the full service of the Internet and a computer. The second type is a very simple store with a lot of computers installed. Most of the time, this type of Internet café is cheaper than the first type, but it does not provide anything but a computer and the Internet. In my opinion, it would be wise to go to the first type of the

Internet café, as it is safer.

In Thai, the phrase for "I'd like to use the Internet" is *khăaw chái in-dtooe-nét khâ* for women, and men say *khăaw chái in-dtooe-nét khráp*. We can translate the first word, *khăaw*, as "asking for," followed by *chái*, which means "use." The third word, *in-dtooe-nét*, is the English word for "Internet," followed by *khâ* or *khráp* to make this phrase more polite. All together, this phrase is equivalent to the phrase "I'd like to use the Internet." All you have to do when you are in the Internet café is walk to the cashier and say this phrase.

Another system-critical question for all you laptop-packing world trekkers is "Does this store have Wi-Fi?" In Thai, women say *mii waai-faai măi khá,* and men say *mii waai-faai măi khráp.* The first word, *mii*, means "have," and "*waai-faai*" is the English word we borrow. *Măi* indicates a question, and *khá* or *khráp* makes it sounds more polite. All together, this phrase literally means "Have Wi-Fi?"

And finally, here is one more phrase that might prove useful: "Password and username please." In Thai, you may ask for a username and password by saying *khăaw yuu-sooe-neem gàp pháat-wòoet dûuai khâ* for women and men say *khăaw yuu-sooe-neem gàp pháat-wòoet dûuai khráp*. The first word, *khăaw*, means "asking for," followed by the English word "username." The third word, *gàp* means "and," and "password" is the same as the English word, followed by *dûuai*, which we add to make it smoother. We add *khâ* and *khráp* to make it more polite. Therefore, this phrase is equivalent to the English phrase "Password and username, please."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip

Most hotels have Internet service provided for a small fee. It is safer to use the Internet at the hotel where you stay. Internet cafés are known for fraud and for hackers. If you really need to use the Internet, go for the proper one that has all services provided like a good coffee shop. This type of store usually has antivirus protection and a good server that protects you. Starbucks in Thailand does provide Internet service with a small fee too.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #22 Riding the Thai Bus: Does This Bus Stop...?

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

22

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. รถสายนี้ไปสยามเซ็นเตอร์หรือเปล่าคะ

2. รถสายนี้ไปสยามเซ็นเตอร์หรือเปล่าครับ

3. รถสายไหนไปสยามเซ็นเตอร์คะ

4. รถสายไหนไปสยามเซ็นเตอร์ครับ

ENGLISH

1. Will this bus go to Siam Center? (female)

2. Will this bus go to Siam Center? (male)

3. Which bus is going to Siam Center? (female)

4. Which bus is going to Siam Center? (male)

ROMANIZATION

1. rót săai níi bpai sà-yăam sen-dtôoe rŭue bplào khá

2. rót săai níi bpai sà-yăam sen-dtôoe rŭue bplào khráp

3. rót săai năi bpai sà-yăam sen-dtôoe khá

CONT'D OVER

4. rót săai năi bpai sà-yăam sen-dtôoe khráp

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ไป	*bpai*	to go	Verb
คะ	*khá*	a polite ending particle for female speakers for questions and requests	particle
ครับ	*khráp*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is a male	particle
นี้	*níi*	this	adjective
ไหน	*năi*	which	adjective

SAMPLE SENTENCES

เขาไปโรงเรียนโดยรถเมล์ *khăo bpai roong-riian dooi rót-mee.* "He goes to school by bus."	ขอตั๋วไปพัทยาสองใบ *khăaw dtŭua bpai phát-thá-yaa săawng bai* "Two tickets to Pattaya please."
ไปก่อนนะครับ *bpai gàawn ná khráp.* "I'm going now."	อย่าลืมบันทึกข่าวคืนนี้นะคะ *yàa luuem ban-thúek khàao khuuen níi ná khá* "Don't forget to record tonight's news."

สบายดีไหมครับ *sà-baai-dii măi khráp* "How are you?"	สวัสดีครับ ไม่ได้เจอกันตั้งนาน *sà-wàt-dii khráp mâi-dâi jooe gan dtâng-naan* "Hello! Long time no see!"
ไม่เป็นไรครับ *mâi-bpen-rai khráp* "No problem."	ผมเป็นนักวิจัยครับ *phŏm bpen nák-wí-jai khráp* "I am a researcher."
ดิฉันซื้อบ้านหลังนี้เมื่อสองปีก่อน *dì-chăn súue bâan lăng níi mûuea săawng bpii gàawn* "I bought this house two years ago."	อันนี้ภาษาไทยเรียกว่าอะไร *an-níi phaa-săa-thai rîiak wâa à-rai.* "What is this called in Thai?"
คุณชอบอันไหนมากที่สุด *khun châawp an năi mâak thîi-sùt* "Which one do you like best?"	

GRAMMAR

The bus is an important means of transportation. However, before you get on the bus, you probably want to confirm whether the bus is going to your destination. We can accomplish this by asking "Will this bus go to" and then add in a destination. In today's lesson, we'll use the shopping center Siam Center as a destination.

In Thai, you can simply say the destination without saying the word for "station" when you are taking a bus. So in Thai, "Will this bus go to Siam Center?" is *rót săai níi bpai sà-yăam sen-dtôoe rŭue bplào.* Don't forget to add *khá* or *khráp* to make it more polite. Therefore, women say *rót săai níi bpai sà-yăam sen-dtôoe rŭue bplào khá,* and men say *rót săai níi bpai sà-yăam sen-dtôoe rŭue bplào khráp.* The first word, *rót*, means "bus," and is followed by *săai*, which means "route." The third word, *níi*, means "this." The fourth word, *bpai*, means "go." The next word, *sà-yăam sen-dtôoe*, is a famous shopping center in Bangkok. The following word, *rŭue*, means "or," and *bplào* means "no." It's a pretty long phrase, I know. Let's see what we have. We have "bus," "route," "this," "go," "Bangkok," "or," "no?" All together, this phrase

means "This car routes to Siam Center or not?"

Although this phrase is useful in many circumstances, you may want to know a little in advance whether the bus you are about to take is going to the destination you want to go to. You may ask someone before you jump into the bus. Simply replace the word *níi* with *năi* to ask "Which bus is going to...?" That means that to ask "Which bus is going to Siam Center?" you should say *rót săai năi bpai sà-yăam sen-dtôoe.* Don't forget to add *khá* or *khráp*. Therefore, women say *rót săai năi bpai sà-yăam sen-dtôoe khá,* and men say *rót săai năi bpai sà-yăam sen-dtôoe khráp.*

Once you have the right bus, you need to know a few things know about riding the bus. The first thing is when to pay. In Thailand, once you get into the bus, the driver or the bus boy will ask you to pay. The bus boy or the driver will calculate the fee to take the bus. You simply tell your destination to the bus boy and he will tell you how much. Taking a bus in Thailand is not expensive if you are going within the same city. It is wise to be prepared by having some coins or small bills like a twenty-*baht* bill ready.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip

If you have no idea which bus to take, ask Thai people at the bus stop. I really recommend you ask whether the bus is going to the destination where you want to go. Public transportation in Bangkok is very complicated.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #23 Riding the Thai Bus: Getting a Ticket

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
4 Cultural Insight

23

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ตั๋วไปสุราษฎร์ธานีค่ะ
2. ตั๋วไปสุราษฎร์ธานีครับ
3. ตั๋วไปสุราษฎร์ธานีสองใบค่ะ
4. ตั๋วไปสุราษฎร์ธานีสองใบครับ
5. ไปสุราษฎร์ธานีเท่าไหร่ค่ะ
6. ไปสุราษฎร์ธานีเท่าไหร่ครับ

ENGLISH

1. Ticket to Surat Thani, please. (female)
2. Ticket to Surat Thani, please. (male)
3. Two tickets to Surat Thani, please. (female)
4. Two tickets to Surat Thani, please. (male)
5. How much is it to Surat Thani? (female)
6. How much is it to Surat Thani? (male)

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. dtŭua bpai sù-râat-thaa-nii khâ

2. dtŭua bpai sù-râat-thaa-nii khráp

3. dtŭua bpai sù-râat-thaa-nii săawng bai khâ

4. dtŭua bpai sù-râat-thaa-nii săawng bai khráp

5. bpai sù-râat-thaa-nii thâo-rài khá

6. bpai sù-râat-thaa-nii thâo-rài khráp

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ตั๋ว	*dtŭua*	ticket	Noun
ไป	*bpai*	to go	Verb
เท่าไหร่	*thâo-rài*	how much, how many	question
สอง	*săawng*	two (2)	Noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ตั๋วหนังราคาเท่าไหร่ครับ *dtŭua-năng raa-khaa thâo-rài khráp.* "How much is a movie ticket?"	เขาไปโรงเรียนโดยรถเมล์ *khăo bpai roong-riian dooi rót-mee.* "He goes to school by bus."

ขอตั๋วไปพัทยาสองใบ *khăaw dtŭua bpai phát-thá-yaa săawng bai* "Two tickets to Pattaya please."	ไปก่อนนะครับ *bpai gàawn ná khráp.* "I'm going now."
นี่ราคาเท่าไหร่คะ *nîi raa-khaa thâo-rài khá.* "How much is this?"	ขอตั๋วไปพัทยาสองใบ *khăaw dtŭua bpai phát-thá-yaa săawng bai* "Two tickets to Pattaya please."

GRAMMAR

When traveling long distances in Thailand, the bus can be a cheap way of getting there. In today's lesson, we're going to work on getting a ticket. We'll use *Surat Thani* as our destination. Let's say the city name once more, *sù-râat-thaa-nii*. This city is located in the Southern part of Thailand and is well known for its beautiful beaches and famous islands.

In Thai, "Ticket to Surat Thani, please" is *dtŭua bpai sù-râat-thaa-nii khâ* for women. And men say *dtŭua bpai sù-râat-thaa-nii khráp*. The first word, *dtŭua*, means "ticket," followed by *bpai*, which means "go." Therefore, *dtŭua bpai sù-râat-thaa-nii khâ* and *dtŭua bpai sù-râat-thaa-nii khráp* mean "A ticket to Surat Thani, please."

Now, if you want to buy more than one ticket, for example if you wanted to buy two tickets, you can accomplish this by saying *dtŭua bpai sù-râat-thaa-nii săawng bai*. Again, we should add *khá* and *khráp* to make it sound polite. Therefore, women say *dtŭua bpai sù-râat-thaa-nii săawng bai khâ*, while men say *dtŭua bpai sù-râat-thaa-nii săawng bai khráp*. As you may notice, we add *săawng bai* in this phrase. The word *săawng* means "two," followed by *bpai*, which is the classifier for "ticket." Therefore, *săawng bai* means "two tickets," and this phrase means "Two tickets to Surat Thani, please."

Bus tickets in Thailand are first come, first served, so you may sit anywhere available. However, some companies may provide you a service where you can select your seat right when you buy your ticket.

Now you might also need to ask "How much is it to your desired destination?" For this example, we'll use the same destination as above. In Thai, "How much is it to Surat Thani?" is *bpai sù-râat-thaa-nii thâo-rài khá* for women, while men say *bpai sù-râat-thaa-nii thâo-rài khráp*. This phrase is equivalent to the English phrase "How much is it to Surat Thani?"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip

Surat Thani is a province located in the southern part of Thailand. It is known for its famous Samui Island and Pa-Ngan Island. These two islands are known among tourists because of not only their beautiful beaches but also the full moon parties held there.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #24 Riding the Thai Train

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
2 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
4 Cultural Insight

#24

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. รถไฟสายนี้ไปสถานีศาลาแดงหรือเปล่าคะ

2. รถไฟสายนี้ไปสถานีศาลาแดงหรือเปล่าครับ

ENGLISH

1. Will this train go to Sa La Daeng station? (female)

2. Will this train go to Sa La Daeng station? (male)

ROMANIZATION

1. rót-fai săai níi bpai sà-thăa-nii săa-laa-daaeng rŭue bplào khá

2. rót-fai săai níi bpai sà-thăa-nii săa-laa-daaeng rŭue bplào khráp

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ไป	*bpai*	to go	Verb
คะ	*khá*	a polite ending particle for female speakers for questions and requests	particle

ครับ	*khráp*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is a male	particle
สถานี	*sà-thăa-nii*	station	Noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

เขาไปโรงเรียนโดยรถเมล์ *khăo bpai roong-riian dooi rót-mee.* "He goes to school by bus."	ขอตั๋วไปพัทยาสองใบ *khăaw dtŭua bpai phát-thá-yaa săawng bai* "Two tickets to Pattaya please."
ไปก่อนนะครับ *bpai gàawn ná khráp.* "I'm going now."	อย่าลืมบันทึกข่าวคืนนี้นะคะ *yàa luuem ban-thúek khàao khuuen níi ná khá* "Don't forget to record tonight's news."
สบายดีไหมครับ *sà-baai-dii măi khráp* "How are you?"	สวัสดีครับ ไม่ได้เจอกันตั้งนาน *sà-wàt-dii khráp mâi-dâi jooe gan dtâng-naan* "Hello! Long time no see!"
ไม่เป็นไรครับ *mâi-bpen-rai khráp* "No problem."	ผมเป็นนักวิจัยครับ *phŏm bpen nák-wí-jai khráp* "I am a researcher."

สถานีรถไฟหัวหินเป็นสถานีที่สวยมาก *sà-thăa-nii rót-fai hŭua-hin bpen sà-thăa-nii thîi sŭuai mâak* "Hua Hin railway station is very beautiful."	จากสถานีชิบุยะไปยังสถานีชินจุกุใช้เวลานานเท่าไหร่ *jàak sà-thăa-nii chí-bù-yá bpai yang sà-thăa-nii chin-jù-gù chái wee-laa naan thâo-rài* "How long does it take from Shibuya station to Shinjuku station?"

GRAMMAR

In Thailand, riding the rails is one of the best ways to get around. If you are traveling from one province to another, the train is probably the most efficient transportation. If you are traveling within Bangkok, the subway or the sky train are also the most recommended ways of traveling around the city.

Once on the platform, you may want to confirm the train you're about to board is heading the right way. So in Thai, "Will this train go to Sa La Daeng station?" is *rót-fai săai níi bpai sà-thăa-nii săa-laa-daaeng rŭue bplào khá.* As *khá* indicates, this phrase is for women. Men should say *rót-fai săai níi bpai sà-thăa-nii săa-laa-daaeng rŭue bplào khráp.* We already learned this phrase from the previous lesson about taking a bus. You can simply use the same phrase for train stations too. Just replace the word for "bus" with the words *rót-fai*, which mean "train," and you are good to go.

Like I mentioned earlier, you can take a train for a trip across the country. But if you are traveling within Bangkok, the capital city of Thailand, you may instead want to take a subway and sky train as it is quicker and you don't have to face the inevitable traffic jams.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip

Thai people use the words *rót-fai* for "train." However, there are a few types of trains in Thailand. There is the common rail train that travels from one province to another. Another type is called the "sky train" or "BTS," in which the electric train system is linked with the

subway system in Bangkok only. The reason we call it "sky train" is because it is as high as a two-story building.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #25 Riding the Thai Train: What Type of Ticket?

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

25

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ตั๋วไปกรุงเทพค่ะ
2. ตั๋วไปกรุงเทพครับ
3. ชั้นหนึ่งปรับอากาศค่ะ
4. ชั้นหนึ่งปรับอากาศครับ
5. ชั้นสองปรับอากาศค่ะ
6. ชั้นสองปรับอากาศครับ

ENGLISH

1. Ticket to Bangkok please. (female)
2. Ticket to Bangkok please. (male)
3. Air conditioned first-class. (female)
4. Air conditioned first-class. (male)
5. Air conditioned second-class. (female)
6. Air conditioned second-class. (male)

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. dtŭua bpai grung-thêep khâ
2. dtŭua bpai grung-thêep khráp
3. chán-nùeng bpràp aa-gàat khâ
4. chán-nùeng bpràp aa-gàat khráp
5. chán-săawng bpràp aa-gàat khâ
6. chán-săawng bpràp aa-gàat khráp

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ตั๋ว	*dtŭua*	ticket	Noun
ไป	*bpai*	to go	Verb
ชั้นหนึ่ง	*chán-nùeng*	first-class	Phrase
ค่ะ	*khâ*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is female	particle
ครับ	*khráp*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is a male	particle

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ตั๋วหนังราคาเท่าไหร่ครับ *dtŭua-năng raa-khaa thâo-rài khráp.* "How much is a movie ticket?"	เขาไปโรงเรียนโดยรถเมล์ *khăo bpai roong-rian dooi rót-mee.* "He goes to school by bus."
ขอตั๋วไปพัทยาสองใบ *khăaw dtŭua bpai phát-thá-yaa săawng bai* "Two tickets to Pattaya please."	ไปก่อนนะครับ *bpai gàawn ná khráp.* "I'm going now."
ที่นั่งชั้นหนึ่งราคาแพงมากเกินไป *thîi-nâng chán-nùeng raa-khaa phaaeng mâak gooen bpai* "First-class seats are way too expensive."	ดิฉันเป็นครูค่ะ *dì-chăn bpen khruu khâ* "I'm a teacher."
เจอกันใหม่พรุ่งนี้ สวัสดีค่ะ *jooe gan mài phrûng-níi sà-wàt-dii khâ* "See you again tomorrow. Good-bye."	ขอบคุณมากค่ะ *khàawp-khun mâak khâ* "Thank you very much."
สบายดีไหมครับ *sà-baai-dii măi khráp* "How are you?"	สวัสดีครับ ไม่ได้เจอกันตั้งนาน *sà-wàt-dii khráp mâi-dâi jooe gan dtâng-naan* "Hello! Long time no see!"
ไม่เป็นไรครับ *mâi-bpen-rai khráp* "No problem."	ผมเป็นนักวิจัยครับ *phŏm bpen nák-wí-jai khráp* "I am a researcher."

GRAMMAR

In Thailand, riding the rails is one of the best ways to get around, especially for a long-distance destination. It is inexpensive and very reliable. Besides, you will get to see many places throughout the trip. In this lesson, we will learn what to say in Thai when buying a train ticket.

In Thailand, we can buy train tickets at the ticket gate window. We can accomplish this by asking "Ticket to [destination], please," where the destination is your desired destination. In today's lesson, we'll use *grung-thêep*, which is "Bangkok," as our destination.

In Thai, "Ticket to Bangkok, please" is *dtŭua bpai grung-thêep khâ* for women; men say *dtŭua bpai grung-thêep khráp*. The first word, *dtŭua*, means "ticket," and is followed by *bpai*, which means "go." *Grung-theep* are the Thai words for "Bangkok," the capital city of Thailand. We add *khâ* and *khráp* to make the phrase more polite. Therefore, this phrase literally means "Ticket to Bangkok, please."

Now, if you want to buy more than one ticket, for example if you wanted to buy four tickets, you can accomplish this by saying *dtŭua bpai grung-thêep sìi bai khâ* and *dtŭua bpai grung-thêep sìi bai khráp*. Again, we should add *khâ* and *khráp* to make it sound polite. You may notice that we also add *sìi bai* in this phrase. The word *sìi* means "four," followed by *bai*, which is the classifier for "ticket." Therefore, *sìi bai* means "four tickets," and this phrase means "Four tickets to Bangkok, please."

Now you might be saying that this phrase sounds very familiar. It is because you have already learned how to buy a ticket in a previous lesson. Buying a ticket for the bus or the train is exactly the same.

However, just the destination may not be enough, as there are several types of seats on trains in Thailand. They are categorized by type of train, which is defined by the destination. Most of the long-haul routes, such as Bangkok to Chiang Mai, offer a Special Express Train that has an air-conditioned first-class day and night seat where you can turn your seat into a bed at night. The air-conditioned second-class day and night seat is similar to the first-class seat, except it is cheaper and a little less fancy.

Once we have established the destination and type of seat you'd like, it is time to purchase a ticket! In Thai, "air-conditioned first class" is *chán-nùeng bpràp aa-gàat*. The first word, *chán*, means "class," followed by *nùeng*, which means "first" or "one." So *chán-nùeng* means "first class." The next set of words is *bpràp aa-gàat*, which is translated into "air-conditioned." All together, *chán-nùeng bpràp aa-gàat* means "air-conditioned first class."

Now let's try for the second-class ticket, shall we? In Thai, "air-conditioned second class" is *chán-săawng bpràp aa-gàat*. The first word, *chán*, means "class," followed by *săawng*, which means "second" or "two." So *chán-săawng* means "second class." The next set of words is *bpràp aa-gàat*, which we translate as "air-conditioned." All together, *chán-săawng bpràp aa-gàat* means "air-conditioned second class."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip

There are many types of trains that offer different types of seats or tickets. The most convenient now would be the Super Express Train with air-conditioned first-class day and night seats where you can turn your seat into a bed at night. First- and second-class seats on this train are air-conditioned. The rest of the day and night seats are cooled by a fan. Other types of seats or tickets are a normal couch chair, but you can also choose whether or not to be in an air-conditioned area.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #26 Taking a Thai Taxi

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

#26

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ไปจตุจักรค่ะ
2. ไปจตุจักรครับ
3. จอดตรงนี้ก็ได้ค่ะ
4. จอดตรงนี้ก็ได้ครับ

ENGLISH

1. Go to Chatujak, please. (women)
2. Go to Chatujak, please. (men)
3. Here is fine. (for women)
4. Here is fine. (for men)

ROMANIZATION

1. bpai jà-dtù-jàk khâ
2. bpai jà-dtù-jàk khráp
3. jàawt dtrong níi gâaw dâai khâ

CONT'D OVER

4. jàawt dtrong níi gâaw dâai khráp

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ไป	*bpai*	to go	Verb
ตรงนี้	*dtrong-níi*	here	adverb
ค่ะ	*khâ*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is female	particle
ครับ	*khráp*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is a male	particle

SAMPLE SENTENCES

เขาไปโรงเรียนโดยรถเมล์ *khăo bpai roong-riian dooi rót-mee.* "He goes to school by bus."	ขอตั๋วไปพัทยาสองใบ *khăaw dtŭua bpai phát-thá-yaa săawng bai* "Two tickets to Pattaya please."
ไปก่อนนะครับ *bpai gàawn ná khráp.* "I'm going now."	ดิฉันไม่เคยมาตรงนี้มาก่อน *dì-chăn mâi khooei maa dtrong-níi maa gàawn* "I haven't been here before."

ดิฉันเป็นครูค่ะ *dì-chăn bpen khruu khâ* "I'm a teacher."	เจอกันใหม่พรุ่งนี้ สวัสดีค่ะ *jooe gan mài phrûng-níi sà-wàt-dii khâ* "See you again tomorrow. Good-bye."
ขอบคุณมากค่ะ *khàawp-khun mâak khâ* "Thank you very much."	สบายดีไหมครับ *sà-baai-dii măi khráp* "How are you?"
สวัสดีครับ ไม่ได้เจอกันตั้งนาน *sà-wàt-dii khráp mâi-dâi jooe gan dtâng-naan* "Hello! Long time no see!"	ไม่เป็นไรครับ *mâi-bpen-rai khráp* "No problem."
ผมเป็นนักวิจัยครับ *phŏm bpen nák-wí-jai khráp* "I am a researcher."	

GRAMMAR

In this lesson we'll cover a phrase used to get you to your destination when taking a taxi. We will look at the most basic way to express this, which is the word "Go" followed by a destination. In today's lesson we'll use *Chatujak* as our destination. Chatujak is known as a weekend market in Bangkok that sells almost everything you can imagine. Let's take a look at what to say to the taxi driver to get there.

In Thai, "Go to Chatujak" is *bpai jà-dtù-jàk khâ* for women and men say *bpai jà-dtù-jàk khráp*. The word *bpai* simply means "Go" so this phrase literally means "Go to Chatujak, please."

This is the common way of expressing where you would like to go. Although the taxi driver would understand if you only say the location you'd like to go. However, saying the complete sentence is a good practice for language skill.

One more helpful phrase when taking a taxi is "Here is fine." This phrase will allow you to get out of the taxi whenever and wherever you want.

In Thai, "Here is fine" is *jàawt dtrong níi gâaw dâai khâ* for women and men say *jàawt dtrong níi gâaw dâai khráp*. The first word *jàawt* means "Stop the car," followed by *dtrong níi* which

means "here." The next words *gâaw dâai* simply mean "fine," and *khâ* or *khráp* is added to make the phrase more polite. Therefore, altogether this phrase literally means "Stop the care here is fine."

In Thailand, you are not expected to tip the driver but small change is always appreciated. Taxi fees in Thailand go by a meter. It always starts at 35 baht for the first two kilometers. If you travel only in Bangkok, it should be just a few hundred maximum. It is wise to have small bills prepared before you get in the taxi.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip 1

If you travel to Thailand the first time, it is wise to ask your concierge at the hotel or any of your friends to write down the address for you in Thai, especially the address you are staying because the name of the location is sometimes very difficult to pronounce. If the taxi driver gets it wrong, you might end up somewhere else.

Quick Tip 2

You are expected to pay an extra fee beside the taxi fee if you are taking taxi from and to the airport. If the taxi driver suggests you to take an express way, you are also expected to pay for the fee. The fee for the express way is around 15 baht to 50 baht. If you are in hurry, the express way would be a good choice.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #27 Where Can I Get...in Thailand?

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
3 Grammar
4 Cultural Insight

27

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ซื้อผลไม้ได้ที่ไหนคะ
2. ซื้อผลไม้ได้ที่ไหนครับ
3. ที่นี่ขายผ้าไหมหรือเปล่าคะ
4. ที่นี่ขายผ้าไหมหรือเปล่าครับ

ENGLISH

1. Where can I buy fruit? (women)
2. Where can I buy fruit? (men)
3. Do you sell silk here? (women)
4. Do you sell silk here? (men)

ROMANIZATION

1. súue phŏn-lá-máai dâai thîi-năi khá
2. súue phŏn-lá-máai dâai thîi-năi khráp
3. thîi nîi khăai phâa-măi rŭue bplào khá

CONT'D OVER

4. thîi nîi khăai phâa-măi rŭue bplào khráp

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ได้	*dâai*	to be able to	auxiliary verb
ที่ไหน	*thîi-năi*	where	Adverb
ซื้อ	*súue*	to buy	verb
ผลไม้	*phŏn-lá-máai*	fruit	Noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

วิศวกรคนนั้นพูดภาษาอังกฤษได้

wít-sà-wá-gaawn khon nán phûut pha-săa-ang-grìt dâai.

"That engineer can speak English."

ช่วยพูดช้าๆได้ไหม

chûuai phûut cháa-cháa dâai măi.

"Could you say that more slowly?"

บ้านของคุณอยู่ที่ไหน

bâan khăawng khun yùu thîi-năi

"Where is your house?"

ดิฉันซื้อนาฬิกาข้อมือเป็นของขวัญวันเกิดให้กับน้องชายของดิฉัน

dì-chăn súue naa-lí-gaa khâaw-muue bpen khăawng-khwăn-wan-gòoet hâi gàp náawng-chaai khăawng dì-chăn

"I bought my younger brother a wrist-watch for his birthday."

ผลไม้โปรดของคุณคืออะไร

phŏn-lá-máai bpròot khăawng khun khuue à-rai

"What's your favorite fruit?"

GRAMMAR

In this lesson we will introduce you a phrase that will help you track down the specific something you're looking for. Today's phrase is "Where can I get/buy something." First we need something, so let's use the word *phŏn-lá-máai* which means "fruit."

In Thai, "Where can I get/buy fruit?" is *súue phŏn-lá-máai dâai thîi-năi khá*" for women, and men say *súue phŏn-lá-máai dâai thîi-năi khráp*. The first word *súue* means "to purchase," followed by *phŏn-lá-máai,* which means "fruit." The next word *dâai* means "to gain," followed by *thîi-năi* which means "where at." Altogether, this phrase is equivalent to the English phrase "Where can I buy fruit?"

Now to ask for a different item, we can just replace the word for fruit with any other word and the phrase works just fine.

Another phrase that will come in handy is to ask if they sell the item here. Let's try *phâa-măi* which means "silk." In Thai, to ask "Do you sell silk here?" is *thîi nîi khăai phâa-măi rŭue bplào khá* for woman, and men say *thîi nîi khăai phâa-măi rŭue bplào khráp*. The first word *thîi nîi* means "this place," followed by *khăai*, which means "to sell." The next word *phâa-măi* is "silk," and it's then followed by *rŭue*, meaning "or" and *bplào*, meaning "not." *Khá* and *khráp* are added to make the phrase more polite. Altogether, this phrase literally means "Here sell silk or not?"

This phrase will come in handy when you doubt if the store sells the item you are looking for. You can also use this phrase to ask if Thailand sells a specific item in general. Now you know how to form a question. To answer these kinds of question, we will cover it in the future lesson.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip 1

Thailand has so many markets both day and night, week days or weekends. One of the most famous weekend markets is located in Bangkok: Chatujak market. You can buy almost everything you can imagine at this market. Using these phrases introduced in today’s lesson will help you locate the item you are looking for easily in the Chatujak Market.

Quick Tip 2

If you stay in the hotel, it is better to ask for where to buy a specific item from the concierge than asking from a taxi driver. Taxi drivers in Thailand sometime represents some store so

they might take you to the store where they can get some commission. This means you might end up paying more than you should.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #28
Is There a... Near Here in Thailand?

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

#28

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. แถวนี้มีร้านขายเสื้อผ้าไหมคะ
2. แถวนี้มีร้านขายเสื้อผ้าไหมครับ
3. แถวนี้มีร้านอาหารไหมคะ
4. แถวนี้มีร้านอาหารไหมครับ

ENGLISH

1. Is there an apparel shop near here? (for women)
2. Is there an apparel shop near here? (for men)
3. Is there a restaurant near here? (for women)
4. Is there a restaurant near here? (for men)

ROMANIZATION

1. thăaeo níi mii ráan khăai sûuea-phâa măi khá
2. thăaeo níi mii ráan khăai sûuea-phâa măi khráp
3. thăaeo níi mii ráan-aa-hăan măi khá

CONT'D OVER

4. thăaeo níi mii ráan-aa-hăan măi khráp

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ร้านอาหาร	*ráan-aa-hăan*	restaurant	Noun
ร้านขายเสื้อผ้า	*ráan khăai sûuea-phâa*	apparel shop	Noun
คะ	*khá*	a polite ending particle for female speakers for questions and requests	particle
ครับ	*khráp*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is a male	particle

SAMPLE SENTENCES

นั่นคือร้านอาหารของเพื่อนของดิฉัน *nân khuue ráan-aa-hăan khăawng phûuean khăawng chăn* "That's my friend's restaurant."	ดิฉันมาร้านขายเสื้อผ้าร้านนี้อาทิตย์ละสองครั้ง *dì-chăn maa ráan khăai sûuea-phâa ráan níi aa-thít lá săawng khráng* "I visit this apparel shop twice a week."

อย่าลืมบันทึกข่าวคืนนี้นะคะ *yàa luuem ban-thúek khàao khuuen níi ná khá* "Don't forget to record tonight's news."	สบายดีไหมครับ *sà-baai-dii măi khráp* "How are you?"
สวัสดีครับ ไม่ได้เจอกันตั้งนาน *sà-wàt-dii khráp mâi-dâi jooe gan dtâng-naan* "Hello! Long time no see!"	ไม่เป็นไรครับ *mâi-bpen-rai khráp* "No problem."

ผมเป็นนักวิจัยครับ

phŏm bpen nák-wí-jai khráp

"I am a researcher."

GRAMMAR

In this lesson we will introduce you to another useful phrase for the place where you can get that something specific. Today's phrase is "Is there a specific place near here?" First we need a place, so let's use the word *ráan khăai sûuea-phâa,* which means "Apparel shop." The word *ráan* means "store" or "shop," followed by *khăai* which means "to sell." The next word *sûuea-phâa* means "clothing." Altogether, *ráan khăai sûuea-phâa* means an "apparel shop."

Now, let's get to the phrase. In Thai, "Is there an apparel shop near here?" is *thăaeo níi mii ráan khăai sûuea-phâa măi khá*. This is for woman while men say *thăaeo níi mii ráan khăai sûuea-phâa măi khráp*. The first word *thăaeo níi* means "this area," followed by *mii* which means "to have." The next word you already know the meaning *ráan khăai sûuea-phâa* means an "apparel shop," followed by *măi* which indicates this phrase is a question. *Khá* or *khráp* is added to make the phrase more polite. Altogether, this phrase literally means "This area has an apparel shop?"

To ask for a different place, we can just replace the word for an apparel shop with any other word and the phrase works just fine. Let's try *ráan-aa-hăan* which in Thai means "restaurant". In Thai, "Is there any restaurant near here?" is *thăaeo níi mii ráan-aa-hăan măi khá* and *thăaeo níi mii ráan-aa-hăan măi khráp*. The only thing that changes is the thing you are looking for. In this case it's *ráan-aa-hăan* which means "restaurant."

There are other words that might come in handy when you are in a foreign country. If you are looking for a supermarket, just replace the word in the phrase we just learned with

"supermarket." It is very common to find that a Thai word is the same as the English word as the Thai language sometimes borrows words from the English language. Another word is the word for a convenience store. The most common word for the 24-hour convenience store is 7-11. It is a specific brand but you can just use it when you mean any 24-hour convenience store.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip

To find a specific store for anything, simply put together the words as following "Shop+Sell +Item" which in Thai is *ráan+khăai+Specific Item*. It works well most of the time although there are some types of stores that have specific names. However, you can use this pattern to form a word for a type of store you are looking for as Thai people would understand what you mean anyway.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #29
Thai Directions

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

#29

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ตรงไป
2. เลี้ยวขวา
3. เลี้ยวซ้าย
4. ตรงไปแล้วเลี้ยวซ้าย
5. อยู่ทางขวา
6. อยู่ทางซ้าย

ENGLISH

1. Go straight.
2. Turn right.
3. Turn left.
4. Go straight then turn left.
5. It's on the right.
6. It's on the left.

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. dtrong bpai

2. líiao khwăa

3. líiao sáai

4. dtrong bpai láaeo líiao sáai

5. yùu thaang-khwăa

6. yùu thaang-sáai

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
เลี้ยว	*líiao*	to turn	
ซ้าย	*sáai*	left	adjective
ขวา	*khwăa*	right	adjective
ตรงไป	*dtrong bpai*	to go straight	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

เลี้ยวซ้ายที่หัวมุมนั้น *líiao sáai thîi hŭua-mum nán* "Turn left at that corner."	ดิฉันเจ็บมือซ้าย *dì-chăn jèp muue sáai* "My left hand hurts."

ตรงไป และเลี้ยวขวา *dtrong bpai láaeo líiao khwăa* "Go straight and turn right."	ผู้ชายที่อยู่ทางขวาสุดคือลุงของดิฉันเอง *phûu-chaai thîi yùu thaang-khwăa sùt khuue lung khăawng chăn eeng* "The guy on the extreme right is my uncle."

ตรงไป และเลี้ยวขวา
dtrong bpai láaeo líiao khwăa

"Go straight and turn right."

GRAMMAR

In today's lesson we'll introduce you directions that will help you find the place you are looking for. Previously we introduced, "Is there a place near here?" and "Where is there a something?" But while we can now ask, we haven't addressed understanding the answer? Today we're going to work on understanding what is said. So today we'll go over basic directions. First we have, "go straight."

In Thai, "Go straight" is *dtrong bpai*. The first word *dtrong* means "straight" followed by *bpai* which means "go." Altogether, *dtrong bpai* means "go straight." Pretty simple, hey?

Now we're going to work on turning. Let's try "Turn right"; in Thai, "turn right" is *líiao khwăa*. The first word *líiao* means "turn" while *khwăa* is, as you guess, means "right." So altogether *líiao khwăa* means "turn right."

Now you can say "turn right," it's easy to say "turn left." Simply replace the word *khwăa* which means "right" by "left" which is *sáai*. So in Thai "turn left" is *líiao sáai*.

Let's combine what we just learned into one phrase. How about to say "Go straight then turn left." You can accomplish this by saying *dtrong bpai láaeo líiao sáai*. As you may notice, I added one word in the middle of two phrases we just learned. The word *láaeo* means "then." So this phrase is literally means "Go straight then turn left." Of course, you can do this with turning right to by saying *dtrong bpai láaeo líiao khwăa*.

The next phrase that comes in handy when asks for direction is "It's on the right" and "It's on the left." In Thai, "It's on the right" is *yùu thaang-khwăa*. The first word *yùu* means "at," followed by *thaang*, which means "way" or "direction." Combined together, *yùu thaang* means "It's on..." The last word *khwăa*, you already know the meaning of, which is "right." So altogether, this phrase is equivalent to the English phrase "It's on the right."

If you want to say "It's on the left," just replace the word "right" with "left" then you are good to

go. In Thai, to say "It's on the left" is *yùu thaang-sáai*.

You probably noticed that I didn't add any *khâ* or *khráp* to make the phrase more polite. Well, you could if you want to be polite, but when asking for directions, it's not very common that the person who explains the directions to you would think about politeness as much as they think about how to explain to you correctly.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip

If you ask for directions from Thai people on street, there is better chance that they will be able to explain to you in English than read the map for you. Thai people are not very good at reading maps but rather remembering directions by heart. One approach for getting directions is to tell them your destination, show them a map if you have one and ask them to point where you are then follow the map yourself.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #30 Can You Take My Picture in Thailand?

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
2 Vocabulary
2 Sample Sentences
3 Grammar
3 Cultural Insight

#30

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ถ่ายรูปให้หน่อยได้ไหมคะ

2. หนึ่ง สอง สาม

ENGLISH

1. Can you take my picture?

2. one, two, three

ROMANIZATION

1. thàai rûup hâi nàwy dâai mă khá

2. nùeng săawng săam

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
หนึ่ง	*nùeng*	one (1)	Noun
สอง	*săawng*	two (2)	Noun
สาม	*săam*	three (3)	Noun
ได้ไหม	*dâai măi*	can you?	phrase

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ขอกาแฟหนึ่งถ้วย *khăaw gaa-faae nùeng thûuai.* "One coffee please."	ขอตั๋วไปพัทยาสองใบ *khăaw dtŭua bpai phát-thá-yaa săawng bai* "Two tickets to Pattaya please."
ผมอยากซื้อหนังสือสามเล่มนี้ *phŏm yàak súue năng-sŭue săam lêm níi* "I want to buy these three books."	คุณทานอาหารเผ็ดได้ไหมคะ *khun thaan aa-hăan phèt dâai măi khá.* "Can you eat spicy food?"

GRAMMAR

Thailand is full of beautiful scenery, and there are times when you'll want to be in the picture or have everyone in your party in the picture. Therefore, there are times when the question, "Can you take my picture?" will be invaluable!

In Thailand, "Can you take my picture?" is *thàai rûup hâi nàwy dâai mă khá* for women and *thàai rûup hâi nàwy dâai mă khráp* for men. The first word *thàai* means "take" as in taking a picture, the next word *rûup* means "picture." The third word *hâi nàwy* means "please do" and followed by *dâai măi* which means "can" as in asking a question. *Khá* and *khráp* are added to make the phrase more polite. Let's recap a little bit. We have *thàai rûup hâi nàwy dâai mă khá* or literally, "take" "picture" "please do" and "can?" as a question. Altogether, this phrase is equivalent to "Can you take picture?" or "Can you take my picture?"

You may realize that I didn't add "I" or "our" in this phrase. That's because this phrase itself in Thai already explains that you are asking someone to take your picture because you can't do it by yourself. That means you will be in the picture. Make sense?

In English, before someone takes a picture, the person taking the picture may say, "1, 2, 3. Cheese." In Thai, we say *nùeng săawng săam*. If you didn't skip any of the lessons in the past then you will realize that this phrase literally means "one, two, three." The first word *nùeng* means "one." *Săawng* means "two," and *săam* means "three."

So if you're taking the picture, you'll say this. And if you're having your picture taken, you'll hear this!

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip

The rumor about having your camera stolen by the stranger you ask to take a picture for you is real in many places in Thailand. As in many other countries, always ask someone you know or you can trust such as government personnel or hotel personnel to hold your camera and take a picture for you.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #31 Can I Take Your Picture in Thailand?

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
4 Cultural Insight

31

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ขอถ่ายรูปได้ไหมคะ
2. ขอถ่ายรูปได้ไหมครับ
3. ขอถ่ายรูปด้วยได้ไหมคะ
4. ขอถ่ายรูปด้วยได้ไหมครับ

ENGLISH

1. May I take (your) picture? (female)
2. May I take (your) picture? (male)
3. Can I take a picture with you? (female)
4. Can I take a picture with you? (male)

ROMANIZATION

1. khăaw thàai rûup dâai măi khá
2. khăaw thàai rûup dâai măi khráp
3. khăaw thàai rûup dûuai dâai măi khá

CONT'D OVER

4. khăaw thàai rûup dûuai dâai măi khráp

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
คะ	*khá*	a polite ending particle for female speakers for questions and requests	particle
ครับ	*khráp*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is a male	particle
ไหม	*măi*	a particle indicating a yes/no question	particle
ถ่ายรูป	*นวด*	to take a picture	Phrase

SAMPLE SENTENCES

อย่าลืมบันทึกข่าวคืนนี้นะคะ *yàa luuem ban-thúek khàao khuuen níi ná khá* "Don't forget to record tonight's news."	สบายดีไหมครับ *sà-baai-dii măi khráp* "How are you?"
สวัสดีครับ ไม่ได้เจอกันตั้งนาน *sà-wàt-dii khráp mâi-dâi jooe gan dtâng-naan* "Hello! Long time no see!"	ไม่เป็นไรครับ *mâi-bpen-rai khráp* "No problem."

ผมเป็นนักวิจัยครับ *phŏm bpen nák-wí-jai khráp* "I am a researcher."	สบายดีไหมครับ *sà-baai-dii măi khráp* "How are you?"
ช่วยพูดอีกครั้งได้ไหม *chûuai phûut ìik khráng dâai măi.* "Could you say that one more time?"	ดิฉันชอบถ่ายรูป *dì-chăn châawp thàai rûup* "I like taking pictures."

GRAMMAR

In this lesson, we'll introduce a question related to, "Can you take my picture?" which is Thai is *khăaw thàai rûup dâai măi*. However, there are cases when you may want to take a picture of someone or with someone, but before doing do, you'd like to ask for permission.

In Thai, "May I take your picture?" for women is *khăaw thàai rûup dâai măi khá* and for men *khăaw thàai rûup dâai măi khráp*. The first word *khăaw* means "may" or "asking for," followed by *thàai rûup* which means "taking picture" as we already learnt in the previous lesson. The next word *dâai măi* means "can?" as asking a question. Altogether, this phrase is equivalent to the English phrase "May I take your picture?"

Now, again, you may notice that I didn't add "you" anywhere in this phrase. That's because this phrase indicates by itself already that you'd like to take a picture of "someone." At the same time, you can use this phrase when asking to take picture of something as well. That means the phrase *khăaw thàai rûup dâai măi* also means "May I take a picture here?"

There may also be times when you want to take a picture with someone. In this case, you could ask by saying *khăaw thàai rûup dûuai dâai măi khá* for women and *khăaw thàai rûup dûuai dâai măi khráp* for men. Now the phrase is very similar to the phrase we just learnt except that I added the word *dûuai* in the middle of the phrase. This word *dûuai* means "together." Adding this word make this phrase mean "Can I take a picture with you?"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip

In some places in Thailand it is prohibited to take pictures such as in certain areas of temples or ancient palaces. These places are considered sacred for Thai people. Taking photos at those places are considered offensive. It is very considerate if you ask for permission before taking any picture as not only you put someone out of trouble as well as yourself.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #32
How Do You Say It In Thai?

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

#32

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. คำว่า “hungry” ภาษาไทยคืออะไรคะ
2. คำว่า “hungry” ภาษาไทยคืออะไรครับ
3. ภาษาไทยเรียกสิ่งนี้ว่าอะไรคะ
4. ภาษาไทยเรียกสิ่งนี้ว่าอะไรครับ
5. ภาษาไทยเรียกสิ่งนั้นว่าอะไรคะ
6. ภาษาไทยเรียกสิ่งนั้นว่าอะไรครับ

ENGLISH

1. How do you say "hungry" in Thai? (f)
2. How do you say "hungry" in Thai? (m)
3. How do you say this in Thai? (f)
4. How do you say this in Thai? (m)
5. How to say that in Thai? (f)
6. How to say that in Thai? (m)

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. kham wâa "hungry" phaa-săa-thai khuue à-rai khá
2. kham wâa "hungry" phaa-săa-thai khuue à-rai khráp
3. phaa-săa-thai rîiak sìng níi wâa à-rai khá
4. phaa-săa-thai rîiak sìng níi wâa à-rai khráp
5. phaa-săa-thai rîiak sìng nán wâa à-rai khá
6. phaa-săa-thai rîiak sìng nán wâa à-rai khráp

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ภาษาไทย	*phaa-săa-thai*	Thai language	noun
สิ่งนี้	*sìng níi*	this thing	noun
สิ่งนั้น	*sìng nán*	that thing	noun
คะ	*khá*	a polite ending particle for female speakers for questions and requests	particle
ครับ	*khráp*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is a male	particle

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Radio ภาษาไทยเรียกว่าวิทยุ *“Radio” phaa-săa-thai rîiak wâa “wít-thá-yú”.* "In Thai, radio is called *wi-tha-yu.*"	อันนี้ภาษาไทยเรียกว่าอะไร *an-níi phaa-săa-thai rîiak wâa à-rai.* "What is this called in Thai?"
สิ่งนี้คืออะไร *sìng níi khuue à-rai* "What is this?"	สิ่งนั้นคืออะไร *sìng nán khuue à-rai* "What is that?"
อย่าลืมบันทึกข่าวคืนนี้นะคะ *yàa luuem ban-thúek khàao khuuen níi ná khá* "Don't forget to record tonight's news."	สบายดีไหมครับ *sà-baai-dii măi khráp* "How are you?"
สวัสดีครับ ไม่ได้เจอกันตั้งนาน *sà-wàt-dii khráp mâi-dâi jooe gan dtâng-naan* "Hello! Long time no see!"	ไม่เป็นไรครับ *mâi-bpen-rai khráp* "No problem."

ผมเป็นนักวิจัยครับ
phŏm bpen nák-wí-jai khráp

"I am a researcher."

GRAMMAR

In today's lesson we'll introduce you to a phrase that will provide you with the tools to learn from the people around. Now, a dictionary is a great idea, but don't forget that you can use Thai to learn in a more fun and interactive way. For today's lesson we're going to need a word, as we're going to cover "How do you say "something" in Thai?" For today's lesson, let's use "hungry" for that something.

In Thai, "How do you say "hungry" in Thai?" is *kham wâa* "hungry" *phaa-săa-thai khuue à-rai khá*. The first word *kham* means "word," followed by *wâa* which means "speak" in this phrase. The next word *phaa-săa-thai* means "Thai language," followed by *khuue* which means "is" and the last word is *à-rai*, which means "what." Let's recap here. We have "word" "speak" "hungry," which we need to know the word in Thai, "Thai language" "is" "what". Altogether, this

phrase is equivalent to the English phrase "How do you say 'hungry' in Thai?"

You can also use this expression without using any English. To accomplish this, you can say "What do you call this in Thai?" In Thai, "What do you call this in Thai?" is *phaa-săa-thai rîiak sìng níi wâa à-rai*. The first word *phaa-săa-thai* means "Thai language" as we just learnt. The next word *rîiak* means "call," followed by *sìng níi* which means "this thing." The next word *wâa* means "speak" and *à-raii* means "what." Let's recap a little bit. We have "Thai language" "call" "this thing" "speak" "what." Altogether, this phrase is equivalent to the English phrase "What do you call this in Thai?" You may want to sound polite when asking people a question. Therefore, women say *phaa-săa-thai rîiak sìng níi wâa à-rai khá*. And men say *phaa-săa-thai rîiak sìng níi wâa à-rai khráp*.

Now with the same phrase, you may replace *sìng níi* which means "this thing" by *sìng nán* which means "that thing." That means to say "What do you call that in Thai?" is *phaa-săa-thai rîiak sìng nán wâa à-rai*. Don't forget to be polite by adding *khá* and *khráp* at the end of the phrase. Therefore, women say *phaa-săa-thai rîiak sìng nán wâa à-rai khá*. And men say *phaa-săa-thai rîiak sìng nán wâa à-rai khráp*.

You can use this phrase almost on everything. However, this phase doesn't specify the type of things you ask about. Therefore, make sure the person you ask knows which thing you are talking about or else you could end up getting the wrong Thai word!

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip

Always remember that the Thai language is a tonal language. Which means one pronunciation in different tones means different things. Usually if you speak in a complete phrase, people usually understand even though you might miss a tone (Thai people also make mistakes). However, if you learn to speak a new word, getting the tone right is very important.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #33
Write It Down in Thai Please

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

#33

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ช่วยเขียนให้หน่อยได้ไหมคะ
2. ช่วยเขียนให้หน่อยได้ไหมครับ
3. ช่วยอ่านให้ฟังได้ไหมคะ
4. ช่วยอ่านให้ฟังได้ไหมครับ

ENGLISH

1. Can you write it down please? (f)
2. Can you write it down please? (m)
3. Can you pronounce it please? (f)
4. Can you pronounce it please? (m)

ROMANIZATION

1. chûuai khĭian hâi nàwy dâai măi khá
2. chûuai khĭian hâi nàwy dâai măi khráp
3. chûuai àan hâi fang dâai măi khá

CONT'D OVER

4. chûuai àan hâi fang dâai măi khráp

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ได้ไหม	*dâai măi*	can you?	phrase
เขียน	*khĭian*	to write	verb
คะ	*khá*	a polite ending particle for female speakers for questions and requests	particle
ครับ	*khráp*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is a male	particle

SAMPLE SENTENCES

คุณทานอาหารเผ็ดได้ไหมคะ *khun thaan aa-hăan phèt dâai măi khá.* "Can you eat spicy food?"	นักเรียนเตรียมมัธยมกำลังเขียนจดหมาย *nák-riian dtriiam mát-thá-yom gam-lang khĭian jòt-măai* "The middle school student is writing a letter."

กรุณาเขียนชื่อของคุณในช่องว่าง *gà-rú-naa khĭian chûue khăawng khun nai châawng wâang* "Please write your name in the blank."	อย่าลืมบันทึกข่าวคืนนี้นะคะ *yàa luuem ban-thúek khàao khuuen níi ná khá* "Don't forget to record tonight's news."
สบายดีไหมครับ *sà-baai-dii măi khráp* "How are you?"	สวัสดีครับ ไม่ได้เจอกันตั้งนาน *sà-wàt-dii khráp mâi-dâi jooe gan dtâng-naan* "Hello! Long time no see!"
ไม่เป็นไรครับ *mâi-bpen-rai khráp* "No problem."	ผมเป็นนักวิจัยครับ *phŏm bpen nák-wí-jai khráp* "I am a researcher."

GRAMMAR

In today's lesson we'll introduce you to a phrase that will provide you with the tools to learn from the people around. Now, a dictionary is a great idea, but don't forget that you can use the Thai language to learn in a more fun and interactive way. Today we're going to cover a way for you to hold on to the information you get.

In Thai, "Can you write it down please?" is *chûuai khĭian hâi nàwy dâai măi khá* for women. Men say, *chûuai khĭian hâi nàwy dâai măi khráp*. The first word *chûuai* means "help," followed by *khĭian*, which means "write down." The next word *hâi nàwy* means "please do" while *dâai măi* means "can?" as a question. "Khá" and "khráp" are added to make the phrase more polite. Let's recap a little. We have "help" "write down" "please do" "can?" Altogether, this phrase is equivalent to the English phrase "Can you write it down please?"

Once you have it, you might like to know how to pronounce it. In Thai, "Can you pronounce this please?" is *chûuai àan hâi fang dâai măi* Of course, you should be polite when asking people for a favor. Therefore, women say *chûuai àan hâi fang dâai măi khá*, and men say *chûuai àan hâi fang dâai măi khráp*. The first word *chûuai* means "help," followed by *àan* which means "pronounce" or "read." The next word *hâi* means "give favor," followed by *fang,* which means "listen." The next word *dâai măi* is "can?" as a question. *Khá* and *khráp* are added to make this phrase more polite. Altogether, we have "help" "pronounce" "give favor" "listen" "can?" and this is equivalent to the English phrase "Can you pronounce this please?"

Like many other languages, Thai words could be pronounced in more than one way and have more than one meaning. Pay attention to the tone of the word as it could mean something else if you get it wrong. But if you put together a phrase, tone is not crucial. However, a good thing is Thai people love when you want to learn more of their language so they will be more than happy to teach you whatever you want to know!

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip 1

Reading and writing in the Thai language is much different than the way it sounds. That's because we have different set of letters. It isn't as hard as the way it looks. Once you get a chance to learn how to speak Thai, learning how to read and write would contribute hugely to your progress.

Quick Tip 2

The word *hâi* means "give" while *nàwy* means little. Combining these two words together into one word means you are asking for the person to do a little favor. There is no fixed grammar on how to use this word. Like other Thai words, the usage depends on the context itself.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #34
How Do You Read This Thai?

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

#34

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. คำนี้อ่านว่าอะไรคะ
2. คำนี้อ่านว่าอะไรครับ
3. คำนั้นอ่านว่าอะไรคะ
4. คำนั้นอ่านว่าอะไรครับ

ENGLISH

1. How do you read this word? (f)
2. How do you read this word? (m)
3. How do you read that word? (f)
4. How do you read that word? (m)

ROMANIZATION

1. kham níi àan wâa à-rai khá
2. kham níi àan wâa à-rai khráp
3. kham nán àan wâa à-rai khá

CONT'D OVER

4. kham nán àan wâa à-rai khráp

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
อ่าน	*àan*	to read	Verb
นี้	*níi*	this	adjective
คำ	*kham*	word	Noun
คะ	*khá*	a polite ending particle for female speakers for questions and requests	particle
ครับ	*khráp*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is a male	particle

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ดิฉันไม่สามารถอ่านใจคุณออก *dì-chăn mâi săa-mâat àan jai khun àawk* "I can't read your mind."	ดิฉันซื้อบ้านหลังนี้เมื่อสองปีก่อน *dì-chăn súue bâan lăng níi mûuea săawng bpii gàawn* "I bought this house two years ago."

อันนี้ภาษาไทยเรียกว่าอะไร *an-níi phaa-săa-thai rîiak wâa à-rai.* "What is this called in Thai?"	ในประโยคนี้มีกี่คำ *nai bprà-yôok níi mii gìi kham* "How many words are there in this sentence?"
อย่าลืมบันทึกข่าวคืนนี้นะคะ *yàa luuem ban-thúek khàao khuuen níi ná khá* "Don't forget to record tonight's news."	สบายดีไหมครับ *sà-baai-dii măi khráp* "How are you?"
สวัสดีครับ ไม่ได้เจอกันตั้งนาน *sà-wàt-dii khráp mâi-dâi jooe gan dtâng-naan* "Hello! Long time no see!"	ไม่เป็นไรครับ *mâi-bpen-rai khráp* "No problem."

ผมเป็นนักวิจัยครับ
phŏm bpen nák-wí-jai khráp

"I am a researcher."

GRAMMAR

In today's lesson we'll introduce you to a phrase that will provide you with the tools to learn from the people around you. Now, a dictionary is a great idea, but don't forget that you can use Thai language to learn in a more fun and interactive way. For this lesson, we're going to need a word, as we're going to cover "How do you read this?"

In Thai, "How do you read this word?" is *kham níi àan wâa à-rai*. And of course, you want to sound polite when asking people a question. Therefore, for women say *kham níi àan wâa à-rai khá*, and men say *kham níi àan wâa à-rai khráp*. The first word *kham* means "word," followed by *níi* which means "this." The next word *àan* means "read," followed by *wâa* which means "speak." And the next word *à-rai* means "what." *Khá* and *khráp* are added to make this phrase more polite. So we have "word" "this" "read" "speak" "what." Altogether, this phrase is equivalent to the English phrase "How do you read this word?"

You can say "How do you read that word?" by simply substituting the word *níi* with *nán* which means "that." So we have this phrase for women *ham nán àan wâa à-rai khá*. And this is for

men: *ham nán àan wâa à-rai khráp*.

Thai people often shorten words in daily conversation. You will hear Thai people say only *rai* instead of *à-rai* very often. You may do so, but I would recommend that you remember the full word and its meaning first then start using the shortened version of it, as it will help you learn the language better.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip

Remembering how to read from the Thai alphabet requires not only intelligence but patience. Thai contains 44 letters with 32 vowels and 5 different tones. To learn how to read and write in Thai properly, learning all letters, vowels and tones would be necessary.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #35 Checking In in Thai

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

#35

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. เช็คอินค่ะ
2. เช็คอินครับ
3. ขอชื่อด้วยค่ะ
4. ขอชื่อด้วยครับ
5. สะกดอย่างไรคะ
6. สะกดอย่างไรครับ

ENGLISH

1. Check-in please. (f)
2. Check-in please. (m)
3. Your name please. (f)
4. Your name please. (m)
5. How do you spell it? (f)
6. How do you spell it? (m)

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. chék-in khâ

2. chék-in khráp

3. khăaw chûue dûuai khâ

4. khăaw chûue dûuai khráp

5. sà-gòt yàang-rai khá

6. sà-gòt yàang-rai khráp

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ชื่อ	*chûue*	to name	noun
สะกด	*sà-gòt*	to spell	verb
อย่างไร	*yàang-rai*	how	Phrase
ค่ะ	*khâ*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is female	particle

SAMPLE SENTENCES

เพลงนั้นชื่ออะไร *phleeng nán chûue à-rai* "What is the name of that song?"	คุณชื่อศิริพรเหรอ *khun chûue sì-rí-phaawn rŏoe* "Is your name Siriporn?"
คุณชื่ออะไร *khun chûue à-rai* "What is your name?"	ดิฉันชื่อศิริพรค่ะ *dì-chăn chûue sì-rí-phaawn khâ* "My name is Siriporn."
ช่วยสะกดชื่อของคุณอีกครั้งได้ไหมคะ *chûuai sà-gòt chûue khăawng khun ìik khráng dâai măi khá* "Could you please spell your name again?"	การสอบเมื่อวานของคุณเป็นอย่างไรบ้าง *gaan-sàawp mûuea-waan khăawng khun bpen yàang-rai bâang* "How was your exam yesterday?"
ดิฉันเป็นครูค่ะ *dì-chăn bpen khruu khâ* "I'm a teacher."	เจอกันใหม่พรุ่งนี้ สวัสดีค่ะ *jooe gan mài phrûng-níi sà-wàt-dii khâ* "See you again tomorrow. Good-bye."
ขอบคุณมากค่ะ *khàawp-khun mâak khâ* "Thank you very much."	

GRAMMAR

In this lesson we'll help you check in! In Thailand, there are many types of accommodation, including hotels, motels, serviced apartments, guest houses, and many more! One good thing about traveling to Thailand is that you can find accommodation in any place in various price points depending on your preference. If you prefer hotel-service accommodation but do not want to pay a whole lot for your long-stay trip, a serviced apartment is a perfect choice. If you want to experience the local lifestyle with a limited budget, a guest house is then your perfect choice! However, no matter what kind of accommodation you choose, you need to check-in! Therefore, today's phrase is "Check-in, please."

In Thai, we use the English word "Check-in" as a word to say *chék-in* in Thai. Many times we borrow words from English especially in an innovation that is hard to explain by one or two Thai words. In this case, "Check-in" in Thai is so long and formal that nobody really uses it except in a written form. However, when we use English words in Thai, we always add a little Thai. In this case, we add politeness, which is *khâ* and *khráp*. Therefore, women say *chék-in khâ* while men say *chék-in kráp*. You can use this phrase upon arrival at the hotel reception counter.

Upon stating the phrase "Check-in please." you will most likely be asked "Your name please," which in Thai is *khăaw chûue dûuai khâ* for women and *khăaw chûue dûuai khráp* for men. The first word *khăaw* means "ask for" followed by *chûue*, which means "name." The next word *dûuai* means "already" and *khâ* or *khráp* is added to make this phrase more polite. Altogether, this phrase is equivalent to the English phrase "Your name, please."

You may also be asked by other similar phrases for your name. The tip is just remember the key word *chûue* which means "name."

You may also be asked how to spell your name, which in Thai is *sà-gòt yang-ngai* Of course, hotel staff will be polite to their guest. Therefore, women would say *sà-gòt yang-ngai khá*, and men would say *sà-gòt yang-ngai khráp*. The first word *sà-gòt* means "spell" while *yang-ngai* is a speaking word of *yàang-rai* which means "how." *Khá* and *khráp* are added to make this phrase more polite. Adding all together, this phrase literally means "How to spell?"

One good thing is even if you can't remember this phrase, you are guaranteed to be taken care of in the hotel, as it is a basic requirement for hotel staff to be able to speak English at least at a basic level-not only in Bangkok but in Thailand in general.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip 1

Thailand has so many accommodations to choose from. One comment I always got from my foreign friends is that you can find any accommodation that fits your lifestyle and budget in Thailand. If you prefer a standardized service that you can rely on, go for chain hotels. On the other hand, you may choose an individually-owned small boutique hotel that offers high standards but touched with unique design. A guest house is good for those of you who love to experience local lifestyle with a limited budget. You may also consider a serviced apartment where you can enjoy your long stay without compromising the convenience of services that rip off your wallet.

Quick Tip 2

Besides shortening words, Thai people often twist the pronunciation of the word and make it easier to say. In the phrase we just introduced, the word *yang-ngai* which means "how" is twisted from *yàang-rai* which becomes a formal written form in the Thai language. It is much less likely that someone would say *yàang-rai* nowadays.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #36 More... Please in Thai

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
4 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

#36

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. เช็คเอ้าท์กี่โมงคะ
2. เช็คเอ้าท์กี่โมงครับ
3. ขอผ้าเช็ดตัวเพิ่มได้ไหมคะ
4. ขอผ้าเช็ดตัวเพิ่มได้ไหมครับ
5. มีเครื่องแปลงกระแสไฟฟ้าไหมคะ
6. มีเครื่องแปลงกระแสไฟฟ้าไหมครับ

ENGLISH

1. What time is checkout? (f)
2. What time is checkout? (m)
3. Can I have some more towels please? (f)
4. Can I have some more towels please? (m)
5. Do you have a power converter? (f)
6. Do you have a power converter? (m)

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. chék-âo gìi moong khá

2. chék-âo gìi moong khráp

3. khăaw phâa-chét-dtuua phôoem dâai măi khá

4. khăaw phâa-chét-dtuua phôoem dâai măi khráp

5. mii khrûueang-bplaaeng-grà-săae-fai-fáa măi khá

6. mii khrûueang-bplaaeng-grà-săae-fai-fáa măi khráp

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
กี่โมง	*gìi moong*	what time	phrase
ผ้าเช็ดตัว	*phâa-chét-dtuua*	bath towel	noun
เครื่องแปลงกระแสไฟฟ้า	*khrûueang-bplaaeng-grà-săae-fai-fáa*	power converter	noun
คะ	*khá*	a polite ending particle for female speakers for questions and requests	particle

ครับ	*khráp*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is a male	particle

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ตอนนี้กี่โมงแล้ว *dtaawn níi gìi moong láaeo* "What time is it now?"	ดิฉันไม่ได้เอาผ้าเช็ดตัวมา *dì-chăn mâi dâi ao phâa-chét-dtuua maa* "I didn't bring my bath towel."
มีเครื่องแปลงกระแสไฟฟ้าอยู่ในห้องของดิฉัน *mii khrûueang-bplaaeng-grà-săae-fai-fáa yùu nai hâwng khăawng dì-chăn* "There is a power converter in my room."	อย่าลืมบันทึกข่าวคืนนี้นะคะ *yàa luuem ban-thúek khàao khuuen níi ná khá* "Don't forget to record tonight's news."
สบายดีไหมครับ *sà-baai-dii măi khráp* "How are you?"	สวัสดีครับ ไม่ได้เจอกันตั้งนาน *sà-wàt-dii khráp mâi-dâi jooe gan dtâng-naan* "Hello! Long time no see!"
ไม่เป็นไรครับ *mâi-bpen-rai khráp* "No problem."	ผมเป็นนักวิจัยครับ *phŏm bpen nák-wí-jai khráp* "I am a researcher."

GRAMMAR

In today's lesson we'll introduce some more useful phrases for hotels and the like. The first phrase is "What time to check out?" which in Thai is *chék-âo gìi moong khá* for women, and

men say *chék-âo gìi moong khráp*. The first word *chék-âo* as you may notice is the English word we borrow. The next word *gìi moong* means "what time," and *khá* or *khráp* is added to make the phrase more polite. Altogether, this phrase literally means "What time to check out?"

And there will be times when you need more of certain things and knowing a certain phrase would help you enjoy the most on your vacation. Let's try asking for more towels. In Thai, "Can I have some more towels please?" is *khăaw phâa-chét-dtuua phôoem dâai măi khá* for women, and men say *khăaw phâa-chét-dtuua phôoem dâai măi khráp.* The first word *khăaw* means "ask for," followed by *phâa-chét-dtuua,* which means "bathroom towels." The next word *phôoem*" means "add more," followed by *dâai măi,* which means "can?" as asking a question. Altogether, this phrase is equivalent to the English phrase "Can I have some more towels please?"

You may use this phrase when asking for some more of other things by replacing the word *phâa-chét-dtuua* with the thing you want. There are a few more words that might come in handy such as "toothbrush" is *bpraaeng-sĭi-fan*. "Toothpaste" is *yaa-sĭi-fan*. "Soap" is *sà-bùu*. And "Shampoo" can be said as an English word.

In Thailand, the electrical system is 220 volts with flat blade attachment plug or flat blades with a round grounding pin. Therefore, we'll introduce you to a crucial phrase for all of you travelers out there who like to bring electrical appliances thousands of miles to die a fiery death on foreign soil.

In Thai, "Do you have a power converter?" is *mii khrûueang-bplaaeng-grà-săae-fai-fáa măi khá* for women, and men say *mii khrûueang-bplaaeng-grà-săae-fai-fáa măi khráp*. The first word *mii* means "have," followed by *khrûueang-bplaaeng,* which means "converter." The next word *grà-săae-fai-fáa* means "electricity" and the next word *măi* indicates that this phrase is a question. Altogether, this phrase is equivalent to the English phrase "Do you have a power converter?"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip

Although some hotels might provide power converters in the guest room or upon request, most hotels don't. It might be an idea to ask for the appliance from the front desk rather than asking for a power converter.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #37
Thai Post Office

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
2 Vocabulary
2 Sample Sentences
3 Grammar
4 Cultural Insight

#37

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ส่งไปนิวยอร์คค่ะ

2. ส่งไปนิวยอร์คครับ

ENGLISH

1. I'd like to send this to New York. (f)

2. I'd like to send this to New York. (m)

ROMANIZATION

1. sòng bpai niu-yàawk khâ

2. sòng bpai niu-yàawk khráp

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
โปสการ์ด	*bpóot-gáat*	postcard	noun
จดหมาย	*jòt-măai*	letter	Noun
พัสดุ	*phát-sà-dù*	package	Noun
ส่ง	*sòng*	to send	Verb
นิวยอร์ค	*niu-yàawk*	New York	Noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

เมื่อวานนี้ดิฉันได้รับโปสการ์ดจากพ่อแม่ของดิฉัน *mûuea-waan-níi dì-chăn dâai ráp bpóot-gáat jàak phâaw mâae khăawng dì-chăn.* "Yesterday, I got a postcard from my parents."	มีจดหมายหลายฉบับอยู่ในตู้ไปรษณีย์ *mii jòt-măai lăai chà-bàp yùu nai dtûu-bprai-sà-nii* "There are a lot of letters in the mailbox."
ดิฉันต้องการส่งพัสดุชิ้นนี้ไปลอนดอนค่ะ *dì-chăn dtâwng-gaan sòng phát-sà-dù chín níi bpai laawn-daawn khâ* "I want to send this package to London."	ดิฉันต้องส่งจดหมายพวกนี้ให้กับแม่ของดิฉัน *dì-chăn dtâwng sòng jòt-măai phûuak níi hâi gàp mâae khăawng dì-chăn* "I need to send these letters for my mother."
ดิฉันมาจากนิวยอร์คค่ะ *dì-chăn maa jàak niu-yàawk khâ* "I'm from New York."	

GRAMMAR

In today's lesson we're going to take a trip to the post office. Now the post office in Thailand is *bprai-sà-nii*. And today we're going to work on getting your postcards, letters and packages home. The expression to accomplish this is "I'd like to send this to" and then the desired country. For today's lesson we'll use New York.

In Thai, "I'd like to send this to New York" is *sòng bpai niu-yàawk khâ* for women while men say *sòng bpai niu-yàawk khráp*. The first word *sòng* means "send," followed by *bpai* which means "go." As in many other languages, the name of the city can be used from the English word. *Khâ* and *khráp* are added to make this phrase more polite. Altogether, this phrase literally means "Send to New York, please."

Now we can build this up a bit by adding the words for what we would like to send. For example, above we mentioned postcards, letters, and packages. As mentioned earlier in the previous lesson, some of the words in Thai are borrowed from English words but may be pronounced with a Thai accent. So the word for "postcard" in Thai is *bpóot-sà-gáat*. The Thai word for "letter" is *jòt-măai*. The word for "packages" is *phát-sà-dù*.

The most convenient postal service in Thailand is the Thailand Post Office, located throughout the country. However, other options such as postal-service stores or Fedex are also available.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip 1

It is less likely that the postal officer will be able to speak English in tourist locations. The hotel concierge can help you send packages so ask for assistance if available.

Quick Tip 2

Postal-service stores are independently owned stores that provide the same postal service provided by Thailand Postal Office. You may find these stores located at the shopping mall or supermarket. These stores usually charge you 10% of the cost of postage as a service charge. The advantage of these store is they open longer than Thailand Postal Office and they are in convenient locations. However, the disadvantage is that your packages may be delivered late or if you are having bad luck, lost. If your package is valuable or fragile use Thailand Postal Office or Fedex.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #38
Thai Post Office 2

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
4 Cultural Insight

#38

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. อะไรอยู่ในกล่องคะ
2. อะไรอยู่ในกล่องครับ
3. กรุณากรอกแบบฟอร์มนี้ค่ะ
4. กรุณากรอกแบบฟอร์มนี้ครับ

ENGLISH

1. What's in the box? (f)
2. What's in the box? (m)
3. Please fill in this form. (f)
4. Please fill in this form. (m)

ROMANIZATION

1. à-rai yùu nai glàwng khá
2. à-rai yùu nai glàwng khráp
3. gà-rú-naa gràawk bàaep-faawm níi khâ

CONT'D OVER

4. gà-rú-naa gràawk bàaep-faawm níi khráp

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
อะไร	*à-rai*	what (an interrogative)	pronoun
อยู่	*yùu*	to be located	verb
กรอก	*gràawk*	to fill out	Verb
ใน	*nai*	in	prepostion

SAMPLE SENTENCES

เครื่องดื่มที่คุณชื่นชอบคืออะไร *krûueang-dùuem thîi khun chûuen châawp khuue à-rai.* "What is your favorite beverage?"	คุณกำลังทำอะไรอยู่ *khun gam-lang tham à-rai yùu.* "What are you doing?"
ทานอะไร *thaan à-rai.* "What are you eating?"	ดื่มอะไร *dùuem à-rai.* "What are you drinking?"
คุณอยู่ที่นี่นานเท่าไหร่แล้วคะ *khun yùu thîi nîi naan thâo-rài láaeo khá.* "How long have you been here?"	ดิฉันจะพักอยู่ที่กรุงเทพฯ สี่วัน *dì-chăn jà phák yùu thîi grung-thêep sìi wan.* "I'll stay in Bangkok for four days."

กรุณากรอกที่อยู่ของคุณตรงนี้ *gà-rú-naa gràawk thîi-yùu khăawng khun dtrong níi* "Please fill in your address here."	อะไรอยู่ในกระเป๋าของคุณ *à-rai yùu nai grà-bpăo khăawng khun* "What's in your pocket?"

GRAMMAR

Today we're going to work on getting your package one step closer to its intended destination. In a previous lesson, we discussed the phrase, "I'd like to send this package to New York." which in Thai is *sòng bpai niu-yàawk khâ* and *sòng bpai niu-yàawk khráp*. Again, the location is interchangeable.

When sending a package though, you're going to have to explain what's in the package. You may even be asked, "What's in the box?" which in Thai is *à-rai yùu nai glàwng khá* for women, and men would say *à-rai yùu nai glàwng khráp*. The first word *à-rai* means "what," followed by *yùu,* which in this case means "located" or "at." The next word *nai* means "inside" while *glàwng* means "box. *Khá* and *khráp* are added to make the phrase more polite. Now let's see what we have. We have "what" "at" "inside" "box." So literally, this phrase means "What's inside the box?"

It is likely that you will be asked to fill out a form for your packages or letter, especially when you send international or registered packages. The phrase for "Please fill out this form" in Thai is *gà-rú-naa gràawk bàaep-faawm níi khâ* for women while men would say *gà-rú-naa gràawk bàaep-faawm níi khráp*. The first word *gà-rú-naa* means "please" as a formal form or request. The next word *gràawk* means "fill out," followed by *bàaep-faawm* which means "form." The next word *níi* means "this," while *khâ* and *khráp* are added to make this phrase more polite. Therefore, this phrase literally means "Please fill out this form."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip

We often see the word *yùu* (อยู่) in Thai phrases. This word means many things from "at," "located" "live" or "Yes!" depending on the context. Often you will hear Thai people say *yùu* as "Yes, I'm here," for a question like "Are you there?" (*yùu măi*). It also used in a phrase like "I

live here" (*dì-chăn yùu thîi-nîi/ phŏm yùu thîi-nîi*). Generally this word indicates the location of someone or something.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #39
Thai Foreign Exchange

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
3 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
4 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

#39

COPYRIGHT © 2016 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. แถวนี้มีตู้เอทีเอ็มไหมคะ
2. แถวนี้มีตู้เอทีเอ็มไหมครับ
3. แถวนี้มีธนาคารไหมคะ
4. แถวนี้มีธนาคารไหมครับ
5. แถวนี้มีที่แลกเงินไหมคะ
6. แถวนี้มีที่แลกเงินไหมครับ
7. ขอแบงค์ย่อยได้ไหมคะ
8. ขอแบงค์ย่อยได้ไหมครับ

ENGLISH

1. Is there an ATM nearby? (f)
2. Is there an ATM nearby? (m)
3. Is there a bank nearby? (f)
4. Is there a bank nearby? (m)
5. Is there any place to exchange currency nearby?(f)

CONT'D OVER

6. Is there any place to exchange currency nearby?(m)

7. Can I have smaller denominations please? (f)

8. Can I have smaller denominations please? (m)

ROMANIZATION

1. thăaeo níi mii dtûu-ee-thii-em măi khá

2. thăaeo níi mii dtûu-ee-thii-em măi khráp

3. thăaeo níi mii thá-naa-khaan măi khá

4. thăaeo níi mii thá-naa-khaan măi khráp

5. thăaeo níi mii thîi lâaek ngoen măi khá

6. thăaeo níi mii thîi lâaek ngoen măi khráp

7. khăaw baaeng yâwy dâai măi khá

8. khăaw baaeng yâwy dâai măi khráp

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ธนาคาร	*thá-naa-khaan*	bank	noun
แลก	*lâaek*	to exchange	verb

แบงค์ย่อย	*baaeng-yâwy*	small bill	phrase
ตู้เอทีเอ็ม	*dtûu-ee-thii-em*	Automatic Teller Machine	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

แม่ของผมเป็นพนักงานธนาคาร *mâae khăawng phŏm bpen phá-nák-ngaan thá-naa-khaan.* "My mother is a member of the bank staff."	ฉันแลกเงินบาทเป็นเงินดอลลาร์ *chan-laek-ngen-baht-pen-ngen-dollar* "I exchanged Thai baht to US dollars."
ดิฉันต้องการแลกเงิน *dì-chăn dtâwng-gaan lâaek ngoen* "I want to exchange money."	คุณมีแบงค์ย่อยมั้ยคะ *khun mii báeng yâauy mái khá* "Do you have small bill?"
ดิฉันไม่มีแบงค์ย่อย *dì-chăn mâi mii baaeng-yâwy* "I don't have small bills."	ดิฉันถอนเงินผ่านทางตู้เอทีเอ็มเสมอ *dì-chăn thăawn ngoen phàan thaang dtûu-ee-thii-em sà-mŏoe* "I always withdraw my money though an ATM."

GRAMMAR

Exchanging money in Thailand is quite convenient. One can exchange money at airports, banks, hotels or even in the shopping mall, or withdraw money from an ATM. Rates applied when withdrawing money from an ATM are likely to be the best; however, when using an ATM it is advisable to make one large withdrawal as you may be charged by both the local bank and your home one. So first things first: let's find a location that will exchange money.

In Thai, "Is there an ATM nearby?" is *thăaeo níi mii dtûu-ee-thii-em măi*. Don't forget to be polite by adding *khá* and *khráp* at the end of the phrase. Therefore, women say *thăaeo níi mii dtûu-ee-thii-em măi khá* and men say *thăaeo níi mii dtûu-ee-thii-em măi khráp*. The first word, *thăaeo níi* means "this area" or "nearby," followed by *mii* which means "to have." The next word *dtûu-ee-thii-em* means "ATM (Automatic Teller Machine)" which is borrowed from the English language. The word *măi* indicates that this phrase is a question while *khá* and *khráp*

are added to make this phrase sounds polite. We have "nearby" "have" "ATM" "question." Or in Thai, *thăaeo níi mii dtûu-ee-thii-em măi*. Added together, this phrase means "Is there any ATM nearby?"

Now to ask for a bank, we can just replace the word for ATM with bank and the phrase works just fine. "Is there a bank nearby?" is *thăaeo níi mii thá-naa-khaan măi khá* and *thăaeo níi mii thá-naa-khaan măi khráp*. The only thing that changes is the thing you are looking for. In this case it's *thá-naa-khaan* which means "bank."

For times when there is neither a bank or an ATM nearby, you can ask "Is there any place to exchange currency nearby?" by replacing the word "ATM" with *thîi lâaek ngoen* which means "place to exchange currency."

Exchanging currency is pretty straightforward. (You need to fill out some forms, and then present the amount you want exchanged.) One extremely useful phrase is, "Smaller denominations please," as it is usually beneficial to have smaller amounts of currency on you for paying for the bus fare, taxi fare, etc.

In Thai, "Can I have smaller denomination please?" is *khăaw baaeng yâwy dâai măi*. Of course, you would want to sound polite when asking this question. Therefore, women say *khăaw baaeng yâwy dâai măi khá*. And men say *khăaw baaeng yâwy dâai măi khráp*. The first word *khăaw* means "Ask for," followed by *baaeng yâwy* which means "small banknotes." The next word *dâai măi* means "please" as requesting for something. *Khá* and *khráp* are added to make this phrase more polite. Altogether, this phrase is equivalent to the English phrase "Can I have smaller denominations please?"

Finally, you can also use the phrase "Can I exchange for a smaller denomination please?" to indicate that you would like a smaller amount of the currency. You can say that with the phrase *khăaw baaeng yâwy dâai măi* but add the word *lâaek* which means "exchange." Therefore, to say "Can I exchange for a smaller denomination please?" in Thai is *khăaw lâaek baaeng yâwy dâai măi khá* and *khăaw lâaek baaeng yâwy dâai măi khráp*. You can use this phrase anywhere anytime you need to get smaller banknotes or coins for your next adventure in Thailand.

Now exchanging currency in Thailand is no longer a difficult mission. These phrases, although not short, are pretty much similar with each other so I hope it is easier for you to remember.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip 1

Often when you ask local people for a place to exchange your money, they might point you to an unofficial currency exchange store. These stores somehow give you a better rate but as with other unofficial or non-legal transactions, there is a risk. It is highly recommended to exchange your money at a bank.

Quick Tip 2

Thai often borrows word from English and then uses it as if it is a Thai word (i.e., stamp). Sometimes we pronounce it the same as the English word, and sometimes we pronounce it with a Thai accent.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #40 Thai Telephone Cards

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
2 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
3 Grammar
4 Cultural Insight

40

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. มีบัตรโทรศัพท์ขายไหมคะ
2. มีบัตรโทรศัพท์ขายไหมครับ
3. ในประเทศหรือระหว่างประเทศ

ENGLISH

1. Do you have telephone cards for sale? (f)
2. Do you have telephone cards for sale? (m)
3. Local or international?

ROMANIZATION

1. mii bàt thoo-rá-sàp khăai măi khá
2. mii bàt thoo-rá-sàp khăai măi khráp
3. nai bprà-thêet rŭue rá-wàang bprà-thêet

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ในประเทศ	*nai bprà-thêet*	local	adjective

ระหว่างประเทศ	*rá-wàang bprà-thêet*	international	adjective
มี	*mii*	to have	verb
หรือ	*rŭue*	or	conjunction

SAMPLE SENTENCES

หมายเลขโทรศัพท์ในประเทศของคุณคือหมายเลขอะไร *măai-lêek thoo-rá-sàp nai bprà-thêet khăawng khun khuue măai-lêek à-rai* "What's your local telephone number?"	วิชาเอกของดิฉันคือธุรกิจระหว่างประเทศ *wí-chaa-èek khăawng dì-chăn khuue thú-rá-gìt rá-wàang bprà-thêet* "My major is International Business."
ชาวบ้านคนนั้นมีหมูหกสิบตัว *chaao-bâan khon nán mii mŭu hòk-sìp dtuua* "That villager has sixty pigs."	คุณจะเลือกใคร เขา หรือผม *khun jà lûueak khrai khăo rŭue phŏm* "Who will you choose? Him or me?"
คุณต้องการจะอยู่กับเธอหรือกับฉัน *khun dtâwng-gaan jà yùu gàp thooe rŭue gàp chăn* "Do you want to be with her or with me?"	

GRAMMAR

While most people wouldn't or couldn't step outside without their cell phones, when visiting another country, sometimes it's a little too far for you local carrier. In recent years you can rent a cell phone when you get to Thailand, and we'll cover this in another lesson, but the good old pay phone is still an option when you're traveling anywhere in Thailand. Public phones in Thailand take coins and phone cards. You can buy both domestic-call and international-call phone cards mostly at convenience stores. And this is going to be our lesson for today.

But before asking for a card, you may want to find out if they have the cards for sale. In Thai, "Do you have telephone cards for sale?" is *mii bàt thoo-rá-sàp khăai măi khá* for women while

and men say *mii bàt thoo-rá-sàp khăai măi khráp* The first word *mii* means "to have," followed by *bàt* which means "card." The next word *thoo-rá-sàp* means "telephone," followed by *khăai* which means "to sell." The word *măi* indicates that this phrase is a question while *khá* and *khráp* are added to make this phrase more polite. Altogether, this phrase literally means "Do you have a telephone card for sale?"

The answer is either yes or no. So let's learn how to say "yes" or "no" from the question we just asked! If they have it for sale, the answer will be *mii khâ* for women and *mii khráp* for men. And if they don't have it for sale, the answer will be *mâi mii khâ* for women and *mâi mii khráp* for men. Now we know that *mii* means "have" and *mâi* means "not." So *mii* means "Yes, we have it for sale" while *mâi mii* means "No, we don't have it for sale."

Now you'll probably also be asked if you want a local or international prepaid phone card. In Thai, "Local or international?" is *nai bprà-thêet rŭue rá-wàang bprà-thêet* The word *nai* means "inside" while *bprà-thêet* means "country." The word *rŭue* means "or" while the next word *rá-wàang* means "between" and as we just learnt *bprà-thêet* means "country." Therefore, *nai bprà-thêet rŭue rá-wàang bprà-thêet* means "Local or international?" You can answer by saying either *nai bprà-thêet* or *rá-wàang bprà-thêet*.

The price for prepaid phone cards varies. You can find almost any price you'd like from 100 Thai baht to 2,000 Thai baht. You can simply ask for the amount you want by saying the number and followed by *khâ* or *khráp* to make it sound polite. For example, if you'd like to purchase a 100 Thai baht prepaid card, you may say *nùeng-ráawy khâ* or *nùeng-ráawy khráp*.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip 1

Many different companies in Thailand offer international phone cards. Don't be surprised if you have so many international phone cards to choose from. Most of them offer pretty much the same rates although there are some companies that offer a better rate than others. It is likely that you will find international phone cards easier than domestic phone cards. That's because the invention of cell phones eliminates the need for public phones plus the cost of calling from cell phones is not so expensive in Thailand.

Quick Tip 2

There are two ways you can use an international phone card. One way is to use a PIN phone card where you receive a PIN number for you to use at any telephone to make a call back to your country. Another way is to purchase a normal international phone card in which can be used only on a public telephone that has an "international call" sign.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #41
One Please in Thai

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
2 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
4 Cultural Insight

#41

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ตั๋วหนึ่งใบค่ะ

2. ตั๋วหนึ่งใบครับ

ENGLISH

1. One ticket please. (f)

2. One ticket please. (m)

ROMANIZATION

1. dtŭua nùeng bai khâ

2. dtŭua nùeng bai khráp

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ตั๋ว	*dtŭua*	ticket	Noun
หนึ่ง	*nùeng*	one (1)	Noun

ค่ะ	*khâ*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is female	particle
ครับ	*khráp*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is a male	particle

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ตั๋วหนังราคาเท่าไหร่ครับ *dtŭua-năng raa-khaa thâo-rài khráp.* "How much is a movie ticket?"	ขอกาแฟหนึ่งถ้วย *khăaw gaa-faae nùeng thûuai.* "One coffee please."
ดิฉันเป็นครูค่ะ *dì-chăn bpen khruu khâ* "I'm a teacher."	เจอกันใหม่พรุ่งนี้ สวัสดีค่ะ *jooe gan mài phrûng-níi sà-wàt-dii khâ* "See you again tomorrow. Good-bye."
ขอบคุณมากค่ะ *khàawp-khun mâak khâ* "Thank you very much."	สบายดีไหมครับ *sà-baai-dii măi khráp* "How are you?"
สวัสดีครับ ไม่ได้เจอกันตั้งนาน *sà-wàt-dii khráp mâi-dâi jooe gan dtâng-naan* "Hello! Long time no see!"	ไม่เป็นไรครับ *mâi-bpen-rai khráp* "No problem."

ผมเป็นนักวิจัยครับ

phŏm bpen nák-wí-jai khráp

"I am a researcher."

GRAMMAR

There is so much to do and see in Thailand, and there are times when access to some must-see places requires an admission ticket. So today were going to work on getting you through the gate, as we'll take a look at buying tickets. In Thai, ticket is *dtŭua*.

In Thai, "One ticket please" is *dtŭua nùeng bai*. Don't forget to be polite even to the person at the ticket window. Therefore, women say *dtŭua nùeng bai khâ* and men say *dtŭua nùeng bai khráp*. The first word *dtŭua* means "ticket," followed by *nùeng,* which means "one." The word *bai* is the classifier for ticket that helps indicate the number of tickets you want. *Khâ* and *khráp* are added to make it more polite. Let's look at what we have. We have "ticket," "one," "classifier of ticket" so this phrase literally means "One ticket please."

In case you need to buy more than one ticket, you can accomplish this by replacing the word *nùeng* with another number. We've already learned how to count from one to five in a previous lesson. Let's recap it now one more time, *nùeng, săawng, săam, sìi, hâa*.

So if you like to get tickets for two people, you may say *dtŭua săawng bai khâ* and *dtŭua săawng bai khráp*. If you need tickets for five people, you may say *dtŭua hâa bai khâ* and *dtŭua hâa bai khráp*.

One good thing about the Thai language is that you can shorten words or eliminate some words without changing the meaning. In this case, you may eliminate the word *dtŭua,* which means "ticket" and say the rest of the phrase. Thai people will still understand you well. In fact, this is the way most Thai people would say the sentence.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip

Classifiers are a crucial part of Thai grammar. They usually follow the number that indicates the quantity of the object. The word *bai* is a classifier for any object that is small and flat like paper such as tickets, leaves, greeting cards, or credit cards. *Bai* is also the classifier for

luggage and bags.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #42
Renting a Thai Phone

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
4 Cultural Insight

42

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ขอซื้อซิมการ์ดค่ะ
2. ขอซื้อซิมการ์ดครับ
3. ขอซื้อซิมการ์ดสองอันค่ะ
4. ขอซื้อซิมการ์ดสองอันครับ
5. ขอซื้อบัตรเติมเงินค่ะ
6. ขอซื้อบัตรเติมเงินครับ

ENGLISH

1. I'd like to buy a SIM card. (female)
2. I'd like to buy a SIM card. (male)
3. I'd like to buy two SIM cards please. (female)
4. I'd like to buy two SIM cards please. (male)
5. I'd like to buy a prepaid card, please. (female)
6. I'd like to buy a prepaid card, please. (male)

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. khăaw súue sim-gàat khâ
2. khăaw súue sim-gàat khráp
3. khăaw súue sim-gàat săawng an khâ
4. khăaw súue sim-gàat săawng an khráp
5. khăaw súue bàt-dtooem-ngoen khâ
6. khăaw súue bàt-dtooem-ngoen khráp

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ขอ	*khăaw*	to request	verb
ซื้อ	*súue*	to buy	Verb
สอง	*săawng*	two (2)	Noun
อัน	*an*	classifier for small objects, general classifier	classifier

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ขอกาแฟหนึ่งถ้วย *khăaw gaa-faae nùeng thûuai.* "One coffee please."	ผมอยากซื้อพัดลม *phŏm yàak súue phát-lom.* "I want to buy a fan."

ขอตั๋วไปพัทยาสองใบ *khăaw dtŭua bpai phát-thá-yaa săawng bai* "Two tickets to Pattaya please."	อันนี้ราคาเท่าไหร่ *an-níi raa-khaa thâo-rài.* "How much does this one cost?"

GRAMMAR

In Today's lesson, we'll cover getting what makes your cell phone work - a SIM card! Nowadays cell phones have become an indispensable tool for the modern day traveler. Since cell phones are not really available for rent in Thailand, plus the cost of a local SIM card is incredibly cheap, getting you a new SIM card that works with your phone seems to be the best option. If your cell phone works with a GSM or 3G network, it might work with Thai's SIM cards too! But first, let's work out how to get you a SIM card.

In Thai, "I'd like to buy a SIM card, please" is *khăaw súue sim-gàat khâ* for women and men say *khăaw súue sim-gàat khráp*. The first word *khăaw* means "to ask for," followed by *súue* which means "to buy." And "SIM card" is definitely an English word that we borrow. *Kh* and *khráp* are added to make this phrase more polite. So this phrase *khăaw súue sim-gàat* means "I'd like to buy a SIM card, please."

Now if you need another SIM card for your significant other or your family, you can do so by adding the number of SIM cards you'd like to buy then followed by the classifier of SIM Cards which is "an" after the object, which in this case is "SIM card." Let's try adding them in the phrase we just learnt.

To say, "I'd like to buy 2 SIM Cards, please" is *khăaw súue sim-gàat săawng an khâ* for women and *khăaw súue sim-gàat săawng an khráp* for men. What I did is I added *săawng* which means "two" then followed by "an" which is the classifier for SIM cards in the phrase. So this phrase means "I'd like to buy 2 SIM cards, please."

But in order to make a call, you need to buy a prepaid credit for your new number. You can accomplish this by replacing the word "SIM card" with the word *bàt-dtooem-ngoen*. In Thai, "I'd like to buy a prepaid card, please" is *khăaw súue bàt-dtooem-ngoen khâ* for women and *khăaw súue bàt-dtooem-ngoen khráp* is for men.

All incoming calls to cell phones in Thailand are free. In other words, you only pay when you make a call. This also applies for short messages. You only pay when you are the sender and not if you are the receiver.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip 1

To make sure that your cell phone works with the SIM card from carrier you select, bring your cell phone along to the authorized store and have someone at store look at your cell phone before purchasing a SIM card. Because once you purchase a SIM card, you can't return it. Although the cost is so little ($3 USD), you can avoid all the hassle. When purchasing a SIM card, make sure you state you need a prepaid, not a contract one.

Quick Tip 2

There are three major cell phone carriers in Thailand: Dtac, AIS and True Move. Dtac is considered the most reasonably priced while AIS claims fto have the best coverage. True Move is also a very large corporation with many store locations throughout country. All of them offer prepaid SIM cards where you can get cell phone service with very little cost.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #43
Do You Have An English Version?

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
3 Grammar
4 Cultural Insight

43

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. มีคู่มือท่องเที่ยวเป็นภาษาอังกฤษไหมคะ
2. มีคู่มือท่องเที่ยวเป็นภาษาอังกฤษไหมคะครับ
3. มีคู่มือท่องเที่ยวเป็นภาษาญี่ปุ่นไหมคะ
4. มีคู่มือท่องเที่ยวเป็นภาษาญี่ปุ่นไหมครับ

ENGLISH

1. Do you have an English information guide?(female)
2. Do you have an English information guide?(male)
3. Do you have a Japanese information guide?(female)
4. Do you have a Japanese information guide?(male)

ROMANIZATION

1. mii khûu-muue thâwng-thîiao bpen phaa-săa-ang-grìt măi khá
2. mii khûu-muue thâwng-thîiao bpen phaa-săa-ang-grìt măi khráp
3. mii khûu-muue thâwng-thîiao bpen phaa-săa-yîi-bpùn măi khá

CONT'D OVER

4. mii khûu-muue thâwng-thîiao bpen phaa-săa-yîi-bpùn măi khráp

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ภาษาญี่ปุ่น	*phaa-săa yîi-bpùn*	Japanese	noun
ภาษาอังกฤษ	*phaa-săa-ang-grìt*	English	Noun
มี	*mii*	to have	verb
ไหม	*măi*	a particle indicating a yes/no question	particle

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ดิฉันพูดภาษาญี่ปุ่นไม่ได้เลย *dì-chăn phûut phaa-săa yîi-bpùn mâi-dâai looei* "I can't speak Japanese at all."	เขาพูดภาษาอังกฤษไม่ได้เลย *khăo phûut phaa-săa-ang-grìt mâi dâai looei.* "He can't speak English at all."
วิศวกรคนนั้นพูดภาษาอังกฤษได้ *wít-sà-wá-gaawn khon nán phûut pha-săa-ang-grìt dâai.* "That engineer can speak English."	ชาวบ้านคนนั้นมีหมูหกสิบตัว *chaao-bâan khon nán mii mŭu hòk-sìp dtuua* "That villager has sixty pigs."
สบายดีไหมครับ *sà-baai-dii măi khráp* "How are you?"	ช่วยพูดอีกครั้งได้ไหม *chûuai phûut ìik khráng dâai măi.* "Could you say that one more time?"

GRAMMAR

In today's lesson we'll introduce you to a crucial phrase for all of you travelers out there who are interested in learning more about the tourist attractions you're going to visit. Learning about the history and cultural significance of places you visit can be just as rewarding as seeing them. Today we'll cover, "Do you have an English information guide?"

In Thai, "Do you have an English information guide?" is *mii khûu-muue thâwng-thîiao bpen phaa-săa-ang-grìt măi khá* for women while men say *mii khûu-muue thâwng-thîiao bpen phaa-săa-ang-grìt măi khráp*. The first word *mii* means "to have," followed by *khûu-muue* which means "guide book." The next word *thâwng-thîiao* means "travel" while *bpen* means "is" or "being." The word *phaa-săa* means "language," followed by *ang-grìt* which means "English." The word *măi* indicates that this phrase is a question while *khá* and *khráp* are added to make this phrase more polite. Therefore, *mii khûu-muue thâwng-thîiao bpen phaa-săa-ang-grìt măi khá* and *mii khûu-muue thâwng-thîiao bpen phaa-săa-ang-grìt măi khráp* mean "Do you have an English information guide?"

Now to ask for a different language, we can just replace the word for "English" with any other word for a language and it works just fine. Let's try "Japanese" which in Thai is *yîi-bpùn*. Therefore, "Do you have a Japanese information guide?" in Thai is *mii khûu-muue thâwng-thîiao bpen phaa-săa-yîi-bpùn măi khá* and *mii khûu-muue thâwng-thîiao bpen phaa-săa-yîi-bpùn măi khráp*

You can use this phrase when you are at a tourist information center located at your destination. You can also use this phrase in a book store when asking for a general travel guide as well.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip 1

The good news is tourism is very important to Thailand. Therefore, it is very easy for you to find an information guide in English and many other languages such as Japanese and Chinese. Most tourist places have all signs written in Thai and English already.

Quick Tip 2

You can use this phrase when asking for something else in English as well. Just remove the word *khûu-muue thâwng-thîiao* which means "travel guide" then you are good to go. That

means you say *mii bpen phaa-săa-ang-grìt măi khá* and *mii bpen phaa-săa-ang-grìt măi khráp* This phrase literally means "Do you have an English version?" However, make sure that you point to the leaflet or information guide that you want.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #44
How Do You Eat This Thai Food?

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

44

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. กินยังไงคะ
2. กินยังไงครับ
3. ต้องเติมอะไรไหมคะ
4. ต้องเติมอะไรไหมครับ
5. เผ็ดไหมคะ
6. เผ็ดไหมครับ

ENGLISH

1. How do you eat this?(female)
2. How do you eat this?(male)
3. Do you add something to this?(female)
4. Do you add something to this?(male)
5. Is this hot?(female)
6. Is this hot?(male)

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. gin yang-ngai khá
2. gin yang-ngai khráp
3. dtâwng dtooem à-rai măi khá
4. dtâwng dtooem à-rai măi khráp
5. phèt măi khá
6. phèt măi khráp

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
เติม	*dtooem*	to add	verb
เผ็ด	*phèt*	spicy	Adjective
กิน	*gin*	to eat (casual)	verb
ไหม	*măi*	a particle indicating a yes/no question	particle

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ดิฉันไม่เติมน้ำตาลลงในกาแฟของดิฉัน *dì-chăn mâi dtooem nám-dtaan long nai gaa-faae khăawng dì-chăn* "I don't add sugar to my coffee."	แฟนหนุ่มของดิฉันชอบอาหารเผ็ดมากๆ *faaen nûm khăawng dì-chăn châawp aa-hăan phèt mâak mâak.* "My boyfriend loves spicy food."

คุณแม่ค่ะ หนูอยากกินไอติม *khun-mâae khâ, nŭu yàak gin ai-dtim* "Mom, I want to eat ice cream."	เมื่อคืนดิฉันกินเยอะเกินไป *mûuea-khuuen dì-chăn gin yóe gooen-bpai* "I ate too much last night."
สบายดีไหมครับ *sà-baai-dii măi khráp* "How are you?"	ช่วยพูดอีกครั้งได้ไหม *chûuai phûut ìik khráng dâai măi.* "Could you say that one more time?"

GRAMMAR

In Thailand, there are many delicious dishes! We've already covered how to order them, but not how to eat them! That, however, is not always so straightforward. So in today's lesson, we'll learn how to ask "How do you eat this?"

In Thai, "How do you eat this?" is *gin yang-ngai khá* for women and men say *gin yang-ngai khráp*. The first word *gin* means "to eat," followed by *yang-ngai*, meaning "how." *Khá* and *khráp* are added to make this phrase more polite. Therefore, *gin yang-ngai khá* and *gin yang-ngai khráp* literally mean "How to eat?"

Hopefully you will get an answer that shows you how to eat this mystery dish, not with a smart remark such as "With your mouth." which by the way, in Thai is *gin dûuai bpàak*. If you hear this...you're in for a long night!

There are other instances when you may want to add some sauce to your dish. In this case, you can ask "Do you add something to this?" which in Thai is *dtâwng dtooem à-rai măi khá* for women and men say *dtâwng dtooem à-rai măi khráp*. The first word *dtâwng* means "must" while *dtooem* means "add." The next word *à-rai* means "what" while *măi* indicates that this phrase is a question. *Khá* and *khráp* are added to make this phrase more polite. Therefore *dtâwng dtooem à-rai măi khá* and *dtâwng dtooem à-rai măi khráp* are equivalent to the English phrase "Do you add something to this?"

Finally, something that may come in handy for everyone out there adverse to hot and spicy things. The all-important question, "Is this hot?" in Thai is *phèt măi khá* for women, while men say *phèt măi khráp*. The first word *phèt* means "hot" as in "spicy" while *măi* indicates that this phrase is a question. *Khá* and *khráp* are added to make this phrase more polite. Therefore, *phèt măi khá* and *phèt măi khráp* literally mean "Is this hot?"

Eating Thai food is a good adventure, but the fact is that some dishes might be very spicy. The way Thai people have their meal could be a little mysterious to those who are unfamiliar.

Some dishes come with many small portions of ingredients for you to mix them the way you like it. Some dishes come with spicy sauces and some come with spices you are not supposed to eat. Asking your friends or the wait staff at the restaurant to explain to you how to eat a certain dish could make a big difference and lead to a good impression!

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip 1

Most of Thai dishes come with rice or are cooked with rice. If your dish does not contain any rice, it is likely that the best way to eat this dish is with rice. This applies to almost all Thai dishes except noodle dishes.

Quick Tip 2

When Thai people eat together in a group, sometimes they will order many dishes and share them together. A common Thai meal contains one soup, a spicy salad or veggie dish and a deep fried or stir fried dish. All of these should be eaten with rice.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #45
I'm a Vegetarian in Thailand

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

45

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ดิฉันเป็นมังสวิรัติค่ะ
2. ผมเป็นมังสวิรัติครับ
3. ดิฉันไม่กินเนื้อสัตว์ค่ะ
4. ผมไม่กินเนื้อสัตว์ครับ
5. ดิฉันไม่กินกระเทียมค่ะ
6. ผมไม่กินกระเทียมครับ

ENGLISH

1. I'm a vegetarian(f)
2. I'm a vegetarian(m)
3. I don't eat meat (f)
4. I don't eat meat (m)
5. I don't eat garlic. (f)
6. I don't eat garlic. (m)

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. dì-chăn bpen mang-sà-wí-rát khâ
2. phŏm bpen mang-sà-wí-rát khráp
3. dì-chăn mâi gin núuea-sàt khâ
4. phŏm mâi gin núuea-sàt khráp
5. dì-chăn mâi gin grà-thiiam khâ
6. phŏm mâi gin grà-thiiam khráp

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ดิฉัน	*dì-chăn*	I (when the speaker is female)	pronoun
เป็น	*bpen*	to be able to, to be, alive	verb
มังสวิรัติ	*mang-sà-wí-rát*	vegetarian	noun
เนื้อสัตว์	*núuea-sàt*	meat	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ดิฉันเป็นครูค่ะ *dì-chăn bpen khruu khâ* "I'm a teacher."	ดิฉันทานข้าว *dì-chăn thaan khâao.* "I eat rice." / "I have a meal."

ดิฉันเป็นนักท่องเที่ยว *dì-chăn bpen nák-thâwng-thîiao.* "I am a tourist."	ผมเป็นนักเทนนิส *phŏm bpen nák-then-nís.* "I'm a tennis player."
ดิฉันเป็นคนไทย *dì-chăn bpen khon-thai.* "I'm a Thai."	ดิฉันไม่ทานเนื้อสัตว์เพราะดิฉันเป็นมังสวิรัติ *dì-chăn mâi thaan núuea-sàt phráw dì-chăn bpen mang-sà-wí-rát* "I don't eat meat because I'm a vegetarian."

ดิฉันไม่ทานเนื้อสัตว์เพราะดิฉันเป็นมังสวิรัติ
dì-chăn mâi thaan núuea-sàt phráw dì-chăn bpen mang-sà-wí-rát
"I don't eat meat because I'm a vegetarian."

GRAMMAR

Today's lesson is not only for all of the vegetarians out there but is also for anyone with an adversity to a particular food! There are many reasons a person won't eat a particular food, and there may be instances when communicating this is necessary. Today we'll go over some phrases to ensure you don't get any unwanted surprises on the plate.

Before we go to our lesson of the day, let's recap on how to say "I" in Thai? For women, it's *dì-chăn* or *chăn* while men say *phŏm*. Now let's go to our lesson!

In Thai, "I'm a vegetarian" is *dì-chăn bpen mang-sà-wí-rát khâ* for women while for men its *phŏm bpen mang-sà-wí-rát khráp*. The first word *dì-chăn* or *phŏm* means "I," followed by *bpen* which means "is" or "to be." The next long word, *mang-sà-wí-rát*, means "vegtarian." *Khá* and *khráp* are added to make this phrase more polite. Therefore, *dì-chăn bpen mang-sà-wí-rát khâ* and *phŏm bpen mang-sà-wí-rát khráp* mean "I'm a vegetarian."

Another way you could communicate that you don't eat a particular food is by saying just that. In Thai, "I don't eat meat!" is *dì-chăn mâi gin núuea-sàt khâ* for women while men say *phŏm mâi gin núuea-sàt khráp* The first word *dì-chăn* or *phŏm* means "I," followed by *mâi* which means "no." The next word *gin* means "eat" while *núuea-sàt* means "meat." *Khá* and *khráp* are added to make this phrase more polite. Therefore, *dì-chăn mâi gin núuea-sàt khâ* and *phŏm mâi gin núuea-sàt khráp* mean "I don't eat meat!"

This sentence pattern can be used for foods other than meat by changing just one word! So

let's take a look at some other possibilities. Let's try "garlic" which is *grà-thiiam*. To say, "I don't eat garlic" in Thai is *dì-chăn mâi gin grà-thiiam khâ* and *phŏm mâi gin grà-thiiam khráp*.

The reason I taught you the word for "garlic" is because I realized that many people don't eat garlic, as they can't stand the smell. And garlic is a fundamental ingredient in most Thai food. It depends on how sensitive to garlic you are, but most Thai dishes start up with garlic in the very beginning step of cooking. So if you don't like garlic, please feel free to tell them.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip 1

When you say you are a vegetarian in Thailand, there's a chance that you will be asked if you are a *jee* or not. Vegetarian is no to meat only, while *jee* is no to all meat, dairy products such as milk, eggs and some vegetables such as parsley and garlic. Every year, most Thai-Chinese in Thailand would practice *jee* for 10 days during lent festival in October.

Quick Tip 2

The word *gin* is an informal spoken word for "eat." It is very common for Thai people to use this word in their daily conversation. However, there might be a chance where you want to be a little more formal. In that case, you can use the word *ráp-bprà-thaan* in substitute of *gin*.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #46 Help! in Thai

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
2 Vocabulary
2 Sample Sentences
3 Grammar
3 Cultural Insight

#46

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ช่วยด้วย!

2. เรียกตำรวจที

ENGLISH

1. Help!

2. Please call police!

ROMANIZATION

1. chûuai dûuai

2. rîiak dtam-rùuat thii

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ช่วยด้วย!	*chûui-dûuai*	Help!	Phrase
เรียก	*rîiak*	to call	verb
ตำรวจ	*dtam-rùuat*	police, policeman	Noun
ที	*thii*	turn, instance	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ช่วยด้วย! *chûui-dûuai* "Help!"	ดิฉันไม่เคยเรียกเขาว่าแฟน *dì-chăn mâi khooei rîiak khăo wâa faaen* "I've never called him my boyfriend."
ตำรวจกำลังปฏิบัติหน้าที่ *dtam-rùuat gam-lang bpà-dtì-bàt nâa-thîi* "A police is on duty."	ผมอยากดูหนังเรื่องนั้นอีกที *phŏm yàak duu năng rûueang nán ìik thii.* "I want to watch that movie again."

GRAMMAR

In today's lesson we'll introduce you to some phrases that hopefully you won't have to use. When traveling to Thailand, while the threat of physical violence in not prevalent, one should always be careful. In addition, this phrase is not limited to threatening situations, but can also be used in the unfortunate event that you or someone around you is in the need of immediate assistance. Today we'll learn how to call for help.

In Thai, "Help!" is *chûuai dûuai*. The first word *chûuai* literally means "help" already. The next word *dûuai*, which means "altogether," is actually added to make this phrase smoother. So this short phrase *chûuai dûuai* means "Help!"

You can also ask someone to call the police by saying *rîiak dtam-rùuat thii*. The first word *rîiak* means "call for" followed by *dtam-rùuat,* which means "police." The next word *thii* is another word that means nothing much but it's a sound that makes a phrase smoother. So altogether *rîiak dtam-rùuat thii* means "Please call police!"

You may notice that I didn't add *khâ* or *khráp* to make these phrases more polite. That's because no one expects you to be polite when asking for help, although being polite is always nice. Therefore, if you are not in such a hurry, adding *khâ* or *khráp* at the end of the phrase could also be an option.

One important thing to remember: the phone number for police in Thailand is 191.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip

Don't hesitate to shout in English or in your own language if you can't recall how to say help in Thai. Getting attention from a crowd is actually the most important thing.

ThaiPod101.com

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #47 Medical Assistance in Thai

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
2 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
3 Grammar
4 Cultural Insight

47

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ช่วยพาไปโรงพยาบาลด้วยค่ะ/ครับ

2. มียาแก้ปวดไหมคะ/ครับ

3. ช่วยเรียกรถพยาบาลด้วยค่ะ/ครับ

ENGLISH

1. Please take me to the hospital.

2. Do you have some painkiller?

3. Please call an ambulance.

ROMANIZATION

1. chûuai phaa bpai roong-phá-yaa-baan dûuai khâ / khráp

2. mii yaa-gâae-bpùuat măi khá / khráp

3. chûuai rîiak rót-phá-yaa-baan dûuai khâ / khráp

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
เรียก	*rîiak*	to call	verb

ยาแก้ปวด	*yaa-gâaep-bpùuat*	painkiller	noun
มี	*mii*	to have	verb
รถพยาบาล	*rót-phá-yaa-baan*	ambulance	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ดิฉันไม่เคยเรียกเขาว่าแฟน *dì-chăn mâi khooei rîiak khăo wâa faaen* "I've never called him my boyfriend."	คุณทานยาแก้ปวดไปแล้วหรือยังคะ *khun thaan yaa-gâaep-bpùuat bpai láaeo rŭue yang khá* "Have you taken a painkiller yet?"
ชาวบ้านคนนั้นมีหมูหกสิบตัว *chaao-bâan khon nán mii mŭu hòk-sìp dtuua* "That villager has sixty pigs."	ดิฉันได้ยินเสียงหวอที่ดังลั่นจากรถพยาบาลเมื่อเช้านี้ *dì-chăn dâai-yin sĭiang-wăaw thîi dang-lân jàak rót-phá-yaa-baan mûuea-cháao-níi* "I heard a very loud siren from an ambulance this morning."

GRAMMAR

In today's lesson we'll introduce you to some phrases useful in case you need medical assistance. When traveling sometimes the body takes a little time to adjust, and the immune system is no different. So today we'll go over some phrases that will help get you to a location where you can get medical assistance. We'll start with the phrase "Please take me to the hospital."

In Thai, "Please take me to the hospital" is *chûuai phaa bpai roong-phá-yaa-baan dûuai*. Even though it is not necessary, but you might like to add *khâ* or *khráp* at the end of the phrase to make it more polite. Therefore, women say *chûuai phaa bpai roong-phá-yaa-baan dûuai khâ* and men say *chûuai phaa bpai roong-phá-yaa-baan dûuai khráp*. The first word *chûuai* means "help" followed by *phaa* which means "take." The third word *bpai* means "go to" while *roong-phá-yaa-baan* means "hospital." The next word *dûuai* means "altogether," but in

this case is added to make the phrase smoother. *Khâ* or *khráp* is added to make this phrase more polite. Therefore, *chûuai phaa bpai roong-phá-yaa-baan dûuai khâ* and *chûuai phaa bpai roong-phá-yaa-baan dûuai khráp* mean "Please take me to the hospital."

If things aren't too bad, perhaps you only need to get some general medicine such as a painkiller, you can do so. In Thai, "Do you have some painkiller?" is *mii yaa-gâae-bpùuat măi khá* for women while men say *mii yaa-gâae-bpùuat măi khráp*. The first word *mii* means "have," followed by *yaa-gâae-bpùuat* which means "painkiller." The next word *măi* indicates that this phrase is a question while *khá* or *khráp* is added to make this phrase more polite.

Therefore, *mii yaa-gâae-bpùuat măi khá* and *mii yaa-gâae-bpùuat măi khráp* are equivalent to the English phrase "Do you have some painkillers?"

And just for insurance purposes, we should cover the phrase "Please call an ambulance" which in Thai is *chûuai rîiak rót-phá-yaa-baan dûuai khâ* for women while men say *chûuai rîiak rót-phá-yaa-baan dûuai khráp*. The first word *chûuai* means "help," followed by *rîiak,* which means "call for." The next word is *rót-phá-yaa-baan* which means "ambulance." The word *dûua* is added to make this phrase smoother as well as *Khâ* or *khráp* which are added to make this phrase more polite. Therefore, *chûuai rîiak rót-phá-yaa-baan dûuai khâ* and *chûuai rîiak rót-phá-yaa-baan dûuai khráp* are equivalent to the English phrase "Please call an ambulance."

You can call for help with ambulance from 191 or a police station in Thailand. However, it is also very common that Thai people around you might stick you in a taxi and send you to the nearest hospital for emergency help.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip 1

Thailand doesn't really have a paramedic station where they send out an ambulance for medical help on call. However, Thailand has a volunteer system in which provide basic help such as a ride to the hospital or coordinating with the police officers while you are on the way to the hospital. This system is very common throughout Thailand free of charge. If you prefer an ambulance where you get help from a professional nurse on board, you may need to contact a specific hospital and wait for help a little longer.

Quick Tip 2

There are only a few hospitals in Thailand that provide an interpreter for difference

languages. One of the most important is Bangkok Hospital Medical Center in which located in Bangkok as well as in Phuket.

ThaiPod101.com

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #48 Symptoms in Thai

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
3 Romanization
4 Vocabulary
5 Sample Sentences
5 Grammar
6 Cultural Insight

48

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ปวดหัวค่ะ
2. ปวดหัวครับ
3. ปวดท้องค่ะ
4. ปวดท้องครับ
5. เจ็บคอค่ะ
6. เจ็บคอครับ
7. เป็นหวัดค่ะ
8. เป็นหวัดครับ
9. คัดจมูกค่ะ
10. คัดจมูกครับ
11. เสียดท้องค่ะ
12. เสียดท้องครับ
13. ท้องเสียค่ะ
14. ท้องเสียครับ

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. I have a headache.(female)
2. I have a headache.(male)
3. I have a stomachache.(female)
4. I have a stomachache.(male)
5. I have a sore throat.(female)
6. I have a sore throat.(male)
7. I have a cold.(female)
8. I have a cold.(male)
9. I have a stuffed nose.(female)
10. I have a stuffed nose.(male)
11. I have heartburn.(female)
12. I have heartburn.(male)
13. I have diarrhea.(female)
14. I have diarrhea.(male)

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. bpùuat hŭua khâ

2. bpùuat hŭua khráp

3. bpùuat tháawng khâ

4. bpùuat tháawng khráp

5. jèp khaaw khâ

6. jèp khaaw khráp

7. bpen wàt khâ

8. bpen wàt khráp

9. khát jà-mùuk khâ

10. khát jà-mùuk khráp

11. sìiat tháawng khâ

12. sìiat tháawng khráp

13. tháawng sĭia khâ

14. tháawng sĭia khráp

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class

เป็นหวัด	*bpen-wàt*	to have a cold	phrase
ปวดหัว	*bpùuat-hŭua*	to have a headache	phrase
เจ็บคอ	*jèp-khaaw*	to have a sore throat	Phrase
ท้องเสีย	*tháawng-sĭia*	to have diarrhea	phrase

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ดิฉันเป็นหวัดมาตั้งแต่อาทิตย์ที่แล้ว *dì-chăn bpen-wàt maa dtâng-dtàae aa-thít thîi láaeo* "I've had a cold since last week."	ดิฉันปวดหัวมาก *dì-chăn bpùuat-hŭua mâak* "I have a bad headache."
เธอพูดมากไม่ได้เพราะเธอเจ็บคอมาก *thooe phûut mâak mâi dâai phráw thooe jèp-khaaw mâak* "She can't talk much because she has a bad sore throat."	เมื่อวานนี้ดิฉันท้องเสีย *mûuea-waan-níi dì-chăn tháawng-sĭia* "I had diarrhea yesterday."

GRAMMAR

In today's lesson we'll work on explaining symptoms so that you can get the proper treatment and any medicine you may need.

In Thai, "I have a headache" is *bpùuat hŭua*. The first word *bpùuat* means "aching" while *hŭua* means "head." So altogether *bpùuat hŭua* means "headache." It is not necessary to say a complete sentence in the Thai language, especially for something informal, therefore, you don't need to include the word "I" in some phrases. The phrase *bpùuat hŭua* can be used to casually express how you feel. But if you like to be formal, for example when talking to a doctor, you can do so by adding *khâ* or *khráp*, which make the phrase more polite. Therefore, women say *bpùuat hŭua khâ* and men say *bpùuat hŭua khráp*.

We'll look at some more phrases with the same pattern; namely, "I have" stays the same and

only the symptom changes. So let's go over some other symptoms.

In Thai, the word for "fever" is *bpen khâi*. And the phrase "I have a fever" is *bpen khâi khâ* for women and *bpen khâi khráp* is for men.

The word for "stomachache" is *bpùuat tháawng*. And the phrase "I have a stomachache" is *bpùuat tháawng khâ* for women and *bpùuat tháawng khráp* is for men.

The word for "cold" is *bpen wàt*. And the phrase "I have a cold" is *bpen wàt khâ* for women and *bpen wàt khráp* is for men.

The word for "sore throat" is *jèp khaaw*. And the phrase "I have a sore throat" is *jèp khaaw khâ* for women and *jèp khaaw khráp* is for men.

The word for "stuffed nose" is *khát jà-mùuk*. And the phrase "I have a stuffed nose" is *khát jà-mùuk khâ* for women and *khát jà-mùuk khráp* is for men.

The word for "heartburn" is *sìiat tháawng*. And the phrase "I have heartburn" is *sìiat tháawng khâ* for women and *sìiat tháawng khráp* is for men.

The word for "diarrhea" is *tháawng sǐia*. And the phrase "I have a diarrhea" is *tháawng sǐia khâ* for women and *tháawng sǐia khráp* is for men.

Don't forget that you can simply use just the word to describe your symptoms. You may just say *tháawng sǐia* to express it casually or add *khâ* or *khráp* to make it a little more polite and formal.

In Thailand, you can get prescribed medicine right at the pharmacy located in the hospital. After a year in the states, I really appreciate the medical system in Thailand where all expenses are in the same bill. And on top of that, they take care of insurance for you right at the minute you are in the hospital waiting for your medicine. You can also get general medicine such as a painkiller or antibiotic at any pharmacy without any prescription required.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip

One factor that makes the Thai language very rich and interesting is that there are levels of language. You can be casual yet polite as much as be formal yet cold by adding or removing one word. There's a chance that you might hear Thai people say the phrases we've learnt in the past with slightly different accent or form. This is because we tend to use a lot of words that have no particular meaning yet make the phrase smoother such as the word *ná*.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #49 Getting Medicine in Thai

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
3 Romanization
4 Vocabulary
4 Sample Sentences
5 Grammar
6 Cultural Insight

49

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ยาแก้หวัดค่ะ
2. ยาแก้หวัดครับ
3. มีที่แรงๆไหมคะ
4. มีที่แรงๆไหมครับ
5. ยาแก้เจ็บคอค่ะ
6. ยาแก้เจ็บคอครับ
7. ยาลดกรดค่ะ
8. ยาลดกรดครับ
9. ยาระบายค่ะ
10. ยาระบายครับ

ENGLISH

1. Cold medicine please. (Female)
2. Cold medicine please. (Male)

CONT'D OVER

3. Do you have a very strong one? (Female)

4. Do you have a very strong one? (Male)

5. Sore throat medicine please.(Female)

6. Sore throat medicine please. (Male)

7. Antacid medicine, please.(Female)

8. Antacid medicine, please.(Male)

9. Laxative medicine, please.(Female)

10. Laxative medicine, please.(Male)

ROMANIZATION

1. yaa-gâae-wàt khâ

2. yaa-gâae-wàt khráp

3. mii thîi raaeng-raaeng măi khá

4. mii thîi raaeng-raaeng măi khráp

5. yaa-gâae-jèp-khaaw khâ

6. yaa-gâae-jèp-khaaw khráp

CONT'D OVER

7. yaa-lót-gròt khâ

8. yaa-lót-gròt khráp

9. yaa-rá-baai khâ

10. yaa-rá-baai khráp

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
มี	*mii*	to have	verb
ที่	*thîi*	at, in, to, that, which, place	preposition, pronoun, noun
แรง	*raaeng*	strong	adjective
ค่ะ	*khâ*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is female	particle
ครับ	*khráp*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is a male	particle

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ชาวบ้านคนนั้นมีหมูหกสิบตัว *chaao-bâan khon nán mii mŭu hòk-sìp dtuua* "That villager has sixty pigs."	เมื่อวานนี้ผมเจอพีทที่ห้องสมุด *mûuea-waan-níi phŏm jooe phíit thîi hâwng-sà-mùt* "Yesterday, I met Pete at the library."
ผู้หญิงกำลังเพลิดเพลินกับพิซซ่าที่อร่อย *phûu-yĭng gam-lang phlôoet-phlooen gàp phít-sâa thîi à-ràwy* "The woman is enjoying delicious pizza."	คนอเมริกันที่อายุสิบหกปีแล้วขับรถได้ *khon-à-mee-rí-gan thîi aa-yú sìp-hòk bpii láaeo khàp rót dâai* "Americans who are sixteen years old can drive cars."
ผมอยู่ที่บ้านของปีเตอร์ *phŏm yùu thîi bâan khăawng bpii-dtôoe.* "I'm at Peter's home."	ผมจะไปติดต่อธุรกิจที่ประเทศไทย *phŏm jà bpai dtìt-dtàaw thú-rá-gìt thîi bprà-thêet-thai* "I'm going on a business trip to Thailand."
ดิฉันดื่มเหล้าสาเกไม่ได้เพราะมันแรงเกินไป *dì-chăn dùuem lâo săa-gee mâi dâai phráw man raaeng gooen-bpai* "I can't drink sake because it's too strong."	ดิฉันเป็นครูค่ะ *dì-chăn bpen khruu khâ* "I'm a teacher."
เจอกันใหม่พรุ่งนี้ สวัสดีค่ะ *jooe gan mài phrûng-níi sà-wàt-dii khâ* "See you again tomorrow. Good-bye."	ขอบคุณมากค่ะ *khàawp-khun mâak khâ* "Thank you very much."
สบายดีไหมครับ *sà-baai-dii măi khráp* "How are you?"	สวัสดีครับ ไม่ได้เจอกันตั้งนาน *sà-wàt-dii khráp mâi-dâi jooe gan dtâng-naan* "Hello! Long time no see!"
ไม่เป็นไรครับ *mâi-bpen-rai khráp* "No problem."	ผมเป็นนักวิจัยครับ *phŏm bpen nák-wí-jai khráp* "I am a researcher."

GRAMMAR

Nobody knows your body like you! And when it comes to over the counter drugs, you may know what you need. So today well cover phrases asking for some basic medicine. Let's start with cold medicine.

In Thai, "Cold medicine please" is *yaa-gâae-wàt khâ* for women and *yaa-gâae-wàt khráp* for men. The first word *yaa* means "medicine" followed by *gâae,* which means "to correct." The next word *wàt* means "cold" and *hhâ* or *khráp* is added to make this phrase more polite. Therefore, *yaa-gâae-wàt khâ* and *yaa-gâae-wàt khráp* are equivalent to the English phrase "Cold medicine, please."

You may want the strongest one they have. In Thai, "Do you have a very strong one?" is *mii thîi raaeng-raaeng măi khá* for women while men say *mii thîi raaeng-raaeng măi khráp*. The first word *mii* means "have" followed by *thîi*, which in this phrase is used to specify an object. The next word *raaeng-raaeng* means "very strong" while *măi* indicates that this phrase is a question. *Khá* or *khráp* is added to make this phrase more polite. Therefore, the phrase *mii thîi raaeng-raaeng măi khá* and *mii thîi raaeng-raaeng măi khráp* mean "Do you have a very strong one?"

We'll look at the phrase introduced today with some more words for medicines as the medicine you want is the only thing that changes, while "please" stays the same. So let's go over some other medicine.

"Sore throat medicine" in Thai is *yaa-gâae-jèp-khaaw*. And the phrase "Sore throat medicine please" is *yaa-gâae-jèp-khaaw khâ* for women and *yaa-gâae-jèp-khaaw khráp* is for men.

"Antacid medicine" in Thai is *yaa-lót-gròt*. And the phrase "Antacid medicine please" is *yaa-lót-gròt khâ* for women and *yaa-lót-gròt khráp* is for men.

"Laxative" in Thai is *yaa-rá-baai*. And the phrase "Laxative please" is *yaa-rá-baai khâ* for women and *yaa-rá-baai khráp* is for men.

Now the good news is common medicine like aspirin, you can say in English. As a matter of fact, knowing the name of medicine in English would actually help you get the right medicine you want as pharmacists in Thailand do know those English names as well.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip 1

The word *raaeng-raaeng* is a repetition of the word *raaeng* which means "strong" or "powerful." Thai often repeats an adjective to emphasise the meaning of it and make it superlative.

Quick Tip 2

Most medicine does not require a prescription. However, if you remember the name or brand of your medicine, do not hesitate to tell the pharmacist as they might know and have it available at the store. Ask for the original label if you are not sure the pharmacist gets you the right medicine as most medicine labels are printed in English.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #50 Explaining Allergies in Thai

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
2 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
3 Grammar
4 Cultural Insight

#50

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ดิฉันแพ้ถั่วลิสงค่ะ

2. ผมแพ้ถั่วลิสงครับ

ENGLISH

1. I'm allergic to peanuts. (female)

2. I'm allergic to peanuts. (male)

ROMANIZATION

1. dì-chăn pháae thùua-lí-sŏng khâ

2. phŏm pháae thùua-lí-sŏng khráp

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ถั่วลิสง	*thùua-lí-sŏng*	peanut	Noun
กุ้ง	*gûng*	shrimp	Noun
นม	*nom*	milk	Noun
ไข่	*khài*	egg	Noun
ดิฉัน	*dì-chăn*	I (when the speaker is female)	pronoun

ผม	*phŏm*	I (when the speaker is male)	Noun
แพ้	*phâae*	to be allergic to	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ดิฉันแพ้ถั่วลิสง *dì-chăn pháae thùua-lí-sŏng* "I'm allergic to peanuts."	ดิฉันแพ้กุ้ง *dì-chăn pháae gûng* "I'm allergic to shrimp."
ดิฉันแพ้นม *dì-chăn pháae nom* "I'm allergic to milk."	ดิฉันแพ้ไข่ *dì-chăn pháae khài* "I'm allergic to eggs."
ดิฉันเป็นครูค่ะ *dì-chăn bpen khruu khâ* "I'm a teacher."	ดิฉันทานข้าว *dì-chăn thaan khâao.* "I eat rice." / "I have a meal."
ผมจะรักคุณตลอดไป *phŏm jà rák khun dtà-làawt-bpai.* "I will always love you."	ผมชื่อวิทยา ยินดีที่ได้รู้จัก *phŏm chûue wít-thá-yaa. yin-dii thîi dâai rúu-jàk.* "My name is Wittaya. Nice to meet you."
ผมทานขนมปัง *phŏm thaan khà-nŏm-bpang.* "I eat bread."	ผมรักคุณ *phŏm rák khun.* "I love you."

ดิฉันแพ้ละอองเกสรดอกไม้
dì-chăn phâae lá-aawng gee-săawn dàawk-máai

"I'm allergic to pollen."

GRAMMAR

In today's lesson, we'll cover a phrase that will prove invaluable for those of you who are allergic to something. Letting other people know about your allergies is vital to a fun and healthy trip. In today's phrase we'll go over "I'm allergic to 'something.'" To start we'll need something that we're allergic to. In some cases, allergies to peanuts can be extremely dangerous so let's start there.

In Thai, "I'm allergic to peanuts," for women is *dì-chăn pháae thùua-lí-sŏng khâ* and for men, *phŏm pháae thùua-lí-sŏng khráp*. The first word *dì-chăn* or *phŏm* means "I" for women and men respectively. The second word *pháae* means "allergy" while *thùua-lí-sŏng* means "peanuts." *Khâ* or *khráp* is added to make this phrase more polite. Therefore, *dì-chăn pháae thùua-lí-sŏng khâ* and *phŏm pháae thùua-lí-sŏng khráp* literally mean "I'm allergic to peanuts."

You can use this phrase to say you are allergic to something else by simply replacing the word "peanuts" or *Thua-Li-Song* with things you're allergic to. Let's try with other common allergies.

I am allergic to shrimp so let's try shrimp, which in Thai is *gung*. And the phrase "I'm allergic to shrimp" is *dì-chăn pháae gûng khâ* for women and *phŏm pháae gûng khráp* is for men.

Now let's try milk, which in Thai is *nom*. And the phrase "I'm allergic to milk" is *dì-chăn pháae nom khâ* for women and *phŏm pháae nom khráp* is for men.

How about eggs? In Thai, "eggs" is *khài*. And the phrase "I'm allergic to eggs" is *dì-chăn pháae khài khâ* for women and *phŏm pháae khài khráp* is for men.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip

Most Thai food doesn't contain milk. However, some sauce may have a peanut base or be mixed with some peanuts or eggs. Since it is not very common for Thai people to allergic to milk, peanuts or eggs, you might like to skip brown sauce or spicy paste. Don't rely on wait staff in the restaurant as they might not know exactly what the ingredients are.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #51
Thai Weather

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
2 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
3 Grammar
4 Cultural Insight

#51

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. วันพรุ่งนี้อากาศจะเป็นยังไงนะ
2. พรุ่งนี้ฝนตก
3. พรุ่งนี้อากาศร้อน

ENGLISH

1. What will the weather be tomorrow?
2. It will rain tomorrow.
3. It will be hot tomorrow.

ROMANIZATION

1. wan-phrûng-níi aa-gàat jà bpen yang-ngai ná
2. phrûng-níi fŏn-dtòk
3. phrûng-níi aa-gàat ráawn

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
พรุ่งนี้	*phrûng-níi*	tomorrow	Noun

ร้อน	*ráawn*	hot	Adjective
อากาศ	*aa-gàat*	weather	noun
ฝนตก	*fŏn-dtòk*	to rain	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

คุณมีแผนสำหรับพรุ่งนี้ไหม *khun mii phăaen săm-ràp phrûng-níi măi* "Do you have any plans for tomorrow?"	อากาศที่เมืองไทยร้อน และชื้น *aa-gàat thîi mueang-thai ráawn láe chúuen* "The weather in Thailand is hot and humid."
ดวงอาทิตย์กำลังแผดเผาทะเลทรายที่ร้อน *duuang-aa-thít gam-lang phàaet-phăo thá-lee-saai thîi ráawn* "The sun is heating the hot desert."	วันนี้อากาศแย่ *wan-níi aa-gàat yâae* "Today, the weather is bad."
เมื่อวานฝนตก *mûuea-waan fŏn-dtok* "It rained yesterday."	ดิฉันเกลียดเวลาที่ฝนตกหลังจากที่หิมะตก *dì-chăn glìat wee-laa thîi fŏn-dtòk lăng jàak thîi hì-má dtòk* "I hate when it rains after it snows."

GRAMMAR

Whether or not the weather will cooperate is an important question on which many plans are made and canceled. In this lesson, we'll cover a phrase that will help you finalize your plans if they depend on the weather.

In Thai, "What will the weather be tomorrow?" is *wan-phrûng-níi aa-gàat jà bpen yang-ngai ná*. The first word *wan-phrûng-níi* means "tomorrow" followed by *aa-gàat* which means "weather." The next word *jà* means "will" while the following word *bpen* means "to be." The word *yang-ngai* is a spoken word meaning "how." The last word *ná* means nothing more than

a word that make this phrase smoother while giving a sense of question. Therefore, *wan-phrûng-níi aa-gàat jà bpen yang-ngai ná* literally means "What will the weather be tomorrow?" You may use this phrase as a casual question or just a phrase that indicates your wonder.

Let's go to the possible answers. In Thai, "It will rain tomorrow" is *phrûng-níi fŏn-dtòk*. As you may guess, the word *fŏn-dtòk* means "rain." Another phrase you should know is "It will be hot tomorrow" is *phrûng-níi aa-gàat ráawn*. The word *ráawn* means "hot" and when Thai people say "hot" it means very, very, hot and humid!

Some say that the weather in Thailand is either rainy, hot, or very hot. I think this is true! It is sunny most of the time in Thailand except the rainy season, which starts in late June to mid October. The average temperature in Thailand depends on where you are but mostly it is at around 32 to 38 Celsius year-round and shoots up to 40 Celsius in summer.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip

The weather in Thailand is commonly hot and humid with bright sun year-round. There are three major seasons in Thailand: summer, rainy season and winter. Summer starts from mid march to mid June. Rainy season starts from mid June to mid October. Winter starts from mid October to mid March. It is warm in rainy season as well as winter although from time to time, the weather can be a little cooler than average. However, travelers should note that because it is warm throughout Thailand, Thai people tend to have air-conditioners on, in which the indoors could be a little cold.

ThaiPod101.com

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #52
First Encounters in Thai

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

#52

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ชื่อศาวิณีค่ะ
2. ยินดีที่ได้รู้จักค่ะ
3. ยินดีที่ได้รู้จักครับ
4. เป็นยังไงบ้างคะ
5. เป็นยังไงบ้างคะครับ

ENGLISH

1. My name is Savinee. (female)
2. Pleased to meet you. (female)
3. Pleased to meet you. (male)
4. How do you do? (female)
5. How do you do? (male)

ROMANIZATION

1. chûue săa-wí-nii khâ

CONT'D OVER

2. yin-dii thîi dâai rúu-jàk khâ

3. yin-dii thîi dâai rúu-jàk khráp

4. bpen yang-ngai bâang khá

5. bpen yang-ngai bâang khráp

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ชื่อ	*chûue*	to name	noun
ยินดีที่ได้รู้จัก	*yin-dii thîi dâai rúu-jàk*	Nice to meet you.	Expression
ค่ะ	*khâ*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is female	particle
ครับ	*khráp*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is a male	particle

SAMPLE SENTENCES

เพลงนั้นชื่ออะไร *phleeng nán chûue à-rai* "What is the name of that song?"	คุณชื่อศิริพรเหรอ *khun chûue sì-rí-phaawn rŏoe* "Is your name Siriporn?"
คุณชื่ออะไร *khun chûue à-rai* "What is your name?"	ดิฉันชื่อศิริพรค่ะ *dì-chăn chûue sì-rí-phaawn khâ* "My name is Siriporn."
ยินดีที่ได้รู้จักค่ะ *yin-dii thîi dâai rúu-jàk khâ* "Nice to meet you."	ยินดีที่ได้รู้จัก *yin-dii thîi dâai rúu-jàk* "Nice to meet you."
ดิฉันเป็นครูค่ะ *dì-chăn bpen khruu khâ* "I'm a teacher."	เจอกันใหม่พรุ่งนี้ สวัสดีค่ะ *jooe gan mài phrûng-níi sà-wàt-dii khâ* "See you again tomorrow. Good-bye."
ขอบคุณมากค่ะ *khàawp-khun mâak khâ* "Thank you very much."	สบายดีไหมครับ *sà-baai-dii măi khráp* "How are you?"
สวัสดีครับ ไม่ได้เจอกันตั้งนาน *sà-wàt-dii khráp mâi-dâi jooe gan dtâng-naan* "Hello! Long time no see!"	ไม่เป็นไรครับ *mâi-bpen-rai khráp* "No problem."
ผมเป็นนักวิจัยครับ *phŏm bpen nák-wí-jai khráp* "I am a researcher."	

GRAMMAR

There is no impression like the first. In today's lesson we'll work on leaving a first impression that will last. Besides *sà-wàt-dii khâ* and *sà-wàt-dii khráp* which means "Hello" in Thai, there are some other phrases you can say to get to know the person better or to keep the conversation going.

The first phrase you can say is to let them know your name. I'll use my name as an example. Do you still remember my name? It's *Savinee*.

In Thai, "My name is Savinee" is *chûue săa-wí-nii*. Easy right? The word *chûue* means "name" and is just followed by your name. Now you might like to be polite by adding *khâ* or *khráp* at the end of the phrase. Therefore, women say *chûue săa-wí-nii khâ* while men say *chûue săa-wí-nii khráp*. That sounds a little weird, because Savinee is a womens' name!

Now you might like to tell them "Nice to meet you" which in Thai is *yin-dii thîi dâai rúu-jàk khâ* for women and men say *yin-dii thîi dâai rúu-jàk khráp*. The first word *yin-dii* means "welcome" or "pleasure" followed by *thîi,* which in this phrase means "that." The next word *dâai* means "get" while *rúu-jàk* means "to know someone." *Khâ* or *khráp* is added to make this phrase more polite and formal. Therefore, *yin-dii thîi dâai rúu-jàk khâ* and *yin-dii thîi dâai rúu-jàk khráp* literally mean "Nice to meet you."

Now to keep the conversation going, you might like to ask "How do you do?" which in Thai is *bpen yang-ngai bâang khá* for women and men say *bpen yang-ngai bâang khráp*. The first word *bpen* means "being," followed by *yang-ngai*, which is a spoken word meaning "how." The next word *bâang* literally means "some" but in this phrase means "recently." *Khá* or *khráp* is added to make this phrase more polite and formal. Therefore, *bpen yang-ngai bâang khá* and *bpen yang-ngai bâang khráp* is equivalent to the English phrase "How do you do?"

Now the rest of the conversation depends on you. But one thing I can tell you is that Thai people will love to talk to you since you can speak a little Thai! Don't worry if you don't know much of Thai to keep the conversation going. I'm sure you will be fine and you might get to learn more from them. If they ask where did you learn how to speak Thai, don't forget to tell them "It's ThaiPod101.com!"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip 1

The same as in many other languages, levels of language are important in choosing the right word and phrase. Thai culture is very rich. We respect seniority such as those who are in a higher social status, higher position, or simply older. Most phrases introduced in these lessons are all neutral, meaning not too polite and not too casual. In other words, they are

common phrases you'll find Thai people use in daily life.

Quick Tip 2

Don't worryabout your accent or forgetting some words or tones. Thai people will try hard to understand you simply because not many foreigners put effort in speaking Thai in general. Therefore, we usually appreciate when someone speaks our language. Talking with Thai people will also help you get the right accent in a short time.

ThaiPod101.com

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #53 What Time Is It in Thailand?

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
2 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
6 Grammar
8 Cultural Insight

#53

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ตอนนี้กี่โมงแล้วคะ

2. ตอนนี้กี่โมงแล้วครับ

ENGLISH

1. What time is it already? (f)

2. What time is it already? (m)

ROMANIZATION

1. dtaawn níi gìi-moong láaeo khá

2. dtaawn níi gìi-moong láaeo khráp

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
เที่ยง	*thîiang*	Noon, Midday	Noun
ตีสอง	*dtii săawng*	2 A.M.	noun
ตีสาม	*dtii săawm*	3 A.M.	noun
ตีสี่	*dtii sìi*	4 A.M.	noun
ตีห้า	*dtii hâa*	5 A.M.	noun

หกโมงเช้า	*hòk moong cháao*	6 A.M.	noun
เจ็ดโมงเช้า	*jèt moong cháao*	7 A.M.	noun
แปดโมงเช้า	*bpàaet moong cháao*	8 A.M.	noun
เก้าโมงเช้า	*gâao moong cháao*	9 A.M.	noun
สิบโมงเช้า	*sìp moong cháao*	10 A.M.	noun
สิบเอ็ดโมงเช้า	*sìp-èt moong cháao*	11 A.M.	noun
ตีหนึ่ง	*dtii nùeng*	1 A.M.	noun
เที่ยงคืน	*thĩiang-khuuen*	Midnight	Noun
ห้าทุ่ม	*hâa thûm*	11 P.M.	noun
บ่ายโมง	*bàai moong*	1 P.M.	noun
บ่ายสองโมง	*bàai săawng moong*	2 P.M.	noun
บ่ายสามโมง	*bàai săam moong*	3 P.M.	noun
สี่โมงเย็น	*sìi moong yen*	4 P.M.	noun
ห้าโมงเย็น	*hâa moong yen*	5 P.M.	noun
หกโมงเย็น	*hòk moong yen*	6 P.M.	noun
หนึ่งทุ่ม	*nùeng thûm*	7 P.M.	noun
สองทุ่ม	*săawng thûm*	8 P.M.	noun
สามทุ่ม	*săam thûm*	9 P.M.	noun
สี่ทุ่ม	*sìi thûm*	10 P.M.	noun
กี่โมง	*gìi moong*	what time	phrase

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ดิฉันต้องไปพบเขาตอนเที่ยง *dì-chăn dtâwng bpai phóp khăo dtaawn thîiang* "I have to go meet him at noon."	ดิฉันได้ยินใครบางคนกรีดร้องตอนตีสอง *dì-chăn dâai-yin khrai baang khon grìit-ráawng dtaawn dtii-săawng* "I heard someone screaming at 2 A.M."
ผู้ชายกลับบ้านตอนตีสาม *phûu-chaai glàp bâan dtaawn dtii săawm* "A man returned home at 3 A.M."	คุณตาของดิฉันตื่นนอนตอนตีสี่ทุกวัน *khun dtaa khăawn dì-chăn dtuuen-naawn dtaawn dtii sìi thúk-wan* "My maternal grandfather wakes up at 4 A.M. everyday."
ดิฉันตั้งนาฬิกาปลุกของดิฉันไว้ตอนตีห้า *dì-chăn dtâng naa-lí-gaa bplùk khăawng dì-chăn wái dtaawn dtii hâa* "I set my alarm clock at 5 A.M."	ดิฉันอาบน้ำด้วยฝักบัวตอนหกโมงเช้าทุกเช้า *dì-chăn àap-náam dûuai fàk-buua dtaawn hòk moong cháao thúk cháao* "I take a shower at 6 A.M. every morning."
ดิฉันและน้องชายทานอาหารเช้าตอนเจ็ดโมงเช้าทุกวัน *dì-chăn láe náawng-chaai thaan aa-hăan cháao dtaawn jèt moong cháao thúk-wan* "My younger brother and I have breakfast at 7 A.M. every morning."	ดิฉันไปโรงเรียนตอนแปดโมงเช้า *dì-chăn bpai roong-riian dtaawn bpàaet moong cháao* "I go to school at 8 A.M."
ชั้นเรียนวิชาวิทยาศาสตร์ของดิฉันเริ่มตอนเก้าโมงเช้า *chán-riian wí-chaa wít-thá-yaa-sàat khăawng dì-chăn rôoem dtaawn gâao moong cháao* "My science class starts at 9 A.M."	ชั้นเรียนวิชาคณิตศาสตร์ของดิฉันเริ่มตอนสิบโมงเช้า *chán-riian wí-chaa khá-nít-sàat khăawng dì-chăn rôoem dtaawn sìp moong cháao* "My math class starts at 10 A.M."

ชั้นเรียนวิชาภาษาไทยของดิฉันเริ่มตอนสิบเอ็ดโมงเช้า *chán-riian wí-chaa phaa-săa thai khăawng dì-chăn rôoem dtaawn sìp-èt moong cháao* "My Thai class starts at 11 A.M."	เที่ยวบินไปปารีสของดิฉันจะออกตอนตีหนึ่ง *thîiao-bin bpai bpaa-rîit khăawng dì-chăn jà àawk dtaawn dtii nùeng* "My flight to Paris will be departing at 1 A.M."
โดยปกติแล้วดิฉันเข้านอนตอนเที่ยงคืน *dooi bpà-gà-dtì láaeo dì-chăn khâo-naawn dtaawn thîiang-khuuen* "I usually go to bed at midnight."	วันนี้ดิฉันต้องถึงบ้านก่อนห้าทุ่ม *wan-níi dì-chăn dtâwng thŭeng bâan gàawn hâa thûm* "Today, I need to arrive home before 11 P.M."
อีก 5 นาทีจะบ่ายโมง *ìik hâa naa-thii jà bàai moong* "It's 5 minutes to 1 P.M."	ชั้นเรียนวิชาภาษาอังกฤษของดิฉันเริ่มตอนบ่ายสองโมง *chán-riian wí-chaa phaa-săa ang-grìt khăawng dì-chăn rôoem dtaawn bàai săawng moong* "My English class starts at 2 P.M."
ดิฉันพบเขาที่โรงพยาบาลตอนบ่ายสามโมง *dì-chăn phóp khăo thîi roong-phá-yaa-baan dtaawn bàai săam moong* "I met him at a hospital at 3 P.M."	ดิฉันมีประชุมตอนสี่โมงเย็น *dì-chăn mii bprà-chum dtaawn sìi moong yen* "I have a meeting at 4 P.M."
ดิฉันต้องส่งรายงานภายในห้าโมงเย็น *dì-chăn dtâwng sòng raai-ngaan phaai-nai hâa moong yen* "I need to submit my report by 5 P.M."	ดิฉันได้จองโต๊ะสำหรับสองคนไว้ตอนหกโมงเย็น *dì-chăn dâai jaawng dtó săm-ràp săawng khon wái dtaawn hòk moong yen* "I've reserved a table for two at 6 P.M."

ดิฉันอาบน้ำด้วยอ่างอาบน้ำตอนหนึ่งทุ่มทุกวัน *dì-chăn àap-náam dûuai àang-àap-náam dtaawn nùeng thûm thúk-wan* "I take a bath at 7 P.M. everyday."	ดิฉันทานอาหารเย็นตอนสองทุ่ม *dì-chăn thaan aa-hăan-yen dtaawn săawng thûm* "I eat dinner at 8 P.M."
เมื่อวานดิฉันออกจากออฟฟิศตอนสามทุ่ม *mûuea-waan dì-chăn àawk-jàak áawp-fít dtaawn săam-thûm* "Yesterday, I left the office at 9 P.M."	เมื่อคืนเขาโทรศัพท์มาหาดิฉันตอนสี่ทุ่ม *mûuea-khuuen khăo thoo-rá-sàp maa hăa dì-chăn dtaawn sìi-thûm* "Last night, he called me at 10 P.M."

ตอนนี้กี่โมงแล้ว
dtaawn níi gìi moong láaeo

"What time is it now?"

GRAMMAR

No matter where you are, you will always have some place to be! Today we'll look at a question that will give the tools to find out how much time you have left to get there. We'll also give you the tools to understand!

In Thai, "What time is it?" is *dtaawn níi gìi-moong láaeo khá* for women and men say *dtaawn níi gìi-moong láaeo khráp*. The first word *dtaawn níi* means "now" followed by *gìi*, which means "how many." The word *moong* means "hour" while *láaeo* means "already." *khá* or *khráp* is added to make this phrase more polite. Therefore, *dtaawn níi gìi-moong láaeo khá* and *dtaawn níi gìi-moong láaeo khráp* literally means "What time is it already?"

Let's go over hours here. We just learnt that "hours" in Thai is *moong*. But we also have other words to indicate different times of the day as well. Now I need you to stay focused a little as it is quite complicated to say what time it is in Thai.

The first one is midday, which is *thîiang wan.*

The second set is from 1 o'clock in the afternoon to 3 o'clock in the afternoon.

bàai moong

bàai săawng moong

bàai săam moong

The third set is from 4 o'clock in the afternoon to 6 o'clock in the evening.
sìi moong yen
hâa moong yen
hòk moong yen
The forth set is from 7 o'clock in the evening to 11 o'clock at night.
nùeng thûm
săawng thûm
săam thûm
sìi thûm
hâa thûm
The fifth is midnight.
thîiang khuuen
The sixth set is from 1 o'clock in the morning to 5 o'clock in the morning.
dtii nùeng
dtii săawng
dtii săam
dtii sìi
dtii hâa
The seven set is from 6 o'clock in the morning to 11 o'clock in the morning.
hòk moong cháao

jèt moong cháao
bpàaet moong cháao
gâao moong cháao
sìp moong cháao
sìp-èt moong cháao
Now let's go over from midday to midnight straight.
thîiang
bàai moong
bàai săawng moong
bàai săam moong
sìi moong yen
hâa moong yen
hòk moong yen
nùeng thûm
săawng thûm
săam thûm

sìi thûm
hâa thûm
thîiang khuuen
dtii nùeng
dtii săawng
dtii săam
dtii sìi
dtii hâa
hòk moong cháao
jèt moong cháao
bpàaet moong cháao
gâao moong cháao
sìp moong cháao
sìp-èt moong cháao

Let's go over minutes here. Minutes in Thai is *naa-thii*. Here you just follow the number with *naa-thii*. For example, 33 minutes is *săam-sìp-săam naa-thii*. 44 minutes is *sìi-sìp-sìi naa-thii*. Now let's put them together. 3:12 in the afternoon is *bàai săam moong sìp-săawng naa-thii*. But let's remember one important thing. When it is at 30 minutes or half an hour, we sometimes say *khrûeng* which means "half." So if the time is at 12:30 in afternoon, it is *thîiang khrûeng*. 5:30 in the morning is *dtii hâa khrûeng*.

If you notice, we have *moong* and *thûm* to indicate if it is in the early morning, afternoon or in the evening. That's because those words are from the way we Thai people in the old times use a music instrument to tell time in the community. The music instrument they used made the noise of *moong* and *thûm*.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip

Thai	*Romanization*	"English"
เที่ยง	*thîiang*	"Noon," "Midday"

บ่ายโมง	*bàai moong*	"1 P.M."
บ่ายสองโมง	*bàai săawng moong*	"2 P.M."
บ่ายสามโมง	*bàai săam moong*	"3 P.M."
สี่โมงเย็น	*sìi moong yen*	"4 P.M."
ห้าโมงเย็น	*hâa moong yen*	"5 P.M."
หกโมงเย็น	*hòk moong yen*	"6 P.M."
หนึ่งทุ่ม	*nùeng thûm*	"7 P.M."
สองทุ่ม	*săawng thûm*	"8 P.M."
สามทุ่ม	*săam thûm*	"9 P.M."
สี่ทุ่ม	*sìi thûm*	"10 P.M."
ห้าทุ่ม	*hâa thûm*	"11 P.M."
เที่ยงคืน	*thîiang khuuen*	"Midnight"
ตีหนึ่ง	*dtii nùeng*	"1 A.M."
ตีสอง	*dtii săawng*	"2 A.M."
ตีสาม	*dtii săam*	"3 A.M."
ตีสี่	*dtii sìi*	"4 A.M."
ตีห้า	*dtii hâa*	"5 A.M."
หกโมงเช้า	*hòk moong cháao*	"6 A.M."
เจ็ดโมงเช้า	*jèt moong cháao*	"7 A.M."

แปดโมงเช้า	*bpàaet moong cháao*	"8 A.M."
เก้าโมงเช้า	*gâao moong cháao*	"9 A.M."
สิบโมงเช้า	*sìp moong cháao*	"10 A.M."
สิบเอ็ดโมงเช้า	*sìp-èt moong cháao*	"11 A.M."

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #54 What Time Does It Open in Thailand?

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

#54

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. เปิดกี่โมงคะ
2. เปิดกี่โมงครับ
3. ปิดกี่โมงคะ
4. ปิดกี่โมงครับ

ENGLISH

1. What time does it open? (Female)
2. What time does it open? (Male)
3. What time does it close? (Female)
4. What time does it close? (Male)

ROMANIZATION

1. bpòoet gìi-moong khá
2. bpòoet gìi-moong khráp
3. bpìt gìi-moong khá

CONT'D OVER

4. bpìt gìi-moong khráp

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
กี่โมง	*gìi moong*	what time	phrase
เปิด	*bpòoet*	to open	Verb
ปิด	*bpìt*	to close	Verb
คะ	*khá*	a polite ending particle for female speakers for questions and requests	particle
ครับ	*khráp*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is a male	particle

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ตอนนี้กี่โมงแล้ว *dtaawn níi gìi moong láaeo* "What time is it now?"	คุณรู้วิธีเปิดกระป๋องนี้ไหม *khun rúu wí-thii bpòoet grà-bpăwng níi măi* "Do you know how to open this can?"

คุณต้องแน่ใจว่าคุณปิดหน้าต่างของคุณทั้งหมดก่อนที่คุณจะไปนอน *khun dtâwng nâae-jai wâa khun bpìt nâa-dtàang khăawng khun tháng-mòt gàawn thîi khun jà bpai naawn* "Make sure you close all your windows before going to bed."	อย่าลืมบันทึกข่าวคืนนี้นะคะ *yàa luuem ban-thúek khàao khuuen níi ná khá* "Don't forget to record tonight's news."
สบายดีไหมครับ *sà-baai-dii măi khráp* "How are you?"	สวัสดีครับ ไม่ได้เจอกันตั้งนาน *sà-wàt-dii khráp mâi-dâi jooe gan dtâng-naan* "Hello! Long time no see!"
ไม่เป็นไรครับ *mâi-bpen-rai khráp* "No problem."	ผมเป็นนักวิจัยครับ *phŏm bpen nák-wí-jai khráp* "I am a researcher."

GRAMMAR

In today's lesson we'll introduce you to a phrase that you'll need on several occasions! We all know you want to see the sights in Thailand and this phrase is essential to plan your days.

In Thai, "What time does it open?" is *bpòoet gìi-moong khá* for women and men say *bpòoet gìi-moong khráp*. The first word *bpòoet* means "open" followed by *gìi-moong,* which means "what time." *khá* or *khráp* is added to make this phrase more polite. Therefore, *bpòoet gìi-moong khá* and *bpòoet gìi-moong khráp* literally mean "What time does it open?"

It's also really important to know when places close! The worst thing to encounter is a closed sign hanging in front of a place you wanted to see! But if you don't see any of those signs, you may like to ask.

In Thai, "What time does it close?" is *bpìt gìi-moong khá* for women and men say *bpìt gìi-moong khráp*. This phrase is very easy and similar to the phrase we just learnt except that we have the word *bpìt* which means "close" in substitute for the word *bpòoet* which means "open."

Most of the shopping malls in Thailand open at around 10 in the morning and close at 10 at night. For museums or any government run place, it usually opens early morning from 8:30

and closes at 4 in the evening.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip

The words *bpòoet* and *bpìt* can also be used as verbs such as close the door or open the book.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #55
I Like It in Thailand

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
2 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
3 Grammar
4 Cultural Insight

#55

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ชอบจังเลย
2. ชอบมากเลย
3. ไม่ชอบเลย

ENGLISH

1. I like it!
2. I like it very much!
3. I don't like it.

ROMANIZATION

1. châawp jang looei
2. châawp mâak looei
3. mâi châawp looei

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ชอบ	*châawp*	like	Verb

มาก	*mâak*	very	adverb
ไม่	*mâi*	not	adverb
เลย	*looei*	used at the end of a statement as an emphasis meaning at all, so much, extremely, completely	particle

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ดิฉันชอบสีชมพู และสีเขียว *dì-chăn châawp sĭi chom-phuu láe sĭi khĭiao* "I like pink and green."	เด็กสาวชอบสุนัขมาก *dèk-săao châawp sù-nák mâak* "The young girl really likes the puppies."
ผมตื่นเต้นมากที่ได้เจอเธอเมื่อวาน *phŏm dtùuen-dtên mâak thîi dâai jooe thooe mûuea-waan* "I was very excited to see her yesterday."	ขอบคุณมากนะคะ *khàawp-khun mâak ná khá* "Thank you very much."
เด็กสาวชอบสุนัขมาก *dèk-săao châawp sù-nák mâak* "The young girl really likes the puppies."	ผู้หญิงไม่ชอบสิ่งที่เธอได้ยิน *phûu-yĭng mâi châawp sìng thîi thooe dâai yin* "The woman dislikes what she hears."
กระเป๋าสตางค์ใบนั้นแพงมากเลย *grá-bpăo-sà-dtaang bai nán phaaeng mâak looei* "That wallet is so expensive."	

GRAMMAR

In today's lesson we'll introduce you to a phrase you'll use countless times on your travels! For everyone out there who likes Thai food, a place or whatever it is, this is the word you want to know so that you keep getting more of it!

In Thai, "I like it!" is *châawp jang looei*. Although this phrase is often used as it is, you may want to add *khâ* or *khráp* to make this phrase more formal and polite. Therefore, women say *châawp jang looei khâ* and men say *châawp jang looei khráp*. The first word *châawp* means "like," followed by *jang* which means "quite." The last word *looei* usually means "passing by," but in this case is added to make the phrase smoother and casual. Therefore, *châawp jang looei khâ* and *châawp jang looei khráp* means "I like it!"

You can also say "I like it very much" by adding the word "very" which is *mâak* and remove the word *jang*. To say, "I like it very much" is *châawp mâak looei khâ* and *châawp mâak looei khráp*.

On the other hand, if you don't like something, you can say "I don't like it." This phrase is also very similar to the phrases we just learnt. Simply add the word *no* or *mâi* in the beginning of the phrase then we get "I don't like it" which is *mâi châawp looei khâ* for women and *mâi châawp looei khráp* is for men. Don't forget that you can say it casually by leaving aside *khâ* and *khráp* in all these phrases.

As I mentioned earlier, these phrases are spoken and casual in the way that most Thai people would speak. You may hear the phrase slightly different such as *châawp jang* or accompanied by "I" such as *phǒm châawp jang looei* or *chăn châawp jang looei* as well. If you meant to say "I like it" as an answer to the question whether you like it or not, you can just use the word *châawp* or "like" as an answer.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip

There are many different phrases to say how you like something. Thai people tend to customize phrases by adding few no-meaning noises at the end of the phrase or rearranging words. However, the key word is *châawp* or "like." The phrases introduced in this lesson are common phrases that you can use anywhere and anytime.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #56
High-frequency Thai Adjectives

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
3 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
4 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

#56

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. น่ารักจัง
2. ไกลจัง
3. ใกล้จัง
4. ร้อนจัง
5. อร่อยจัง
6. สวยจัง
7. ไม่อร่อยเลย

ENGLISH

1. It's cute.
2. It's far.
3. It's near.
4. It's hot.
5. It's delicious.
6. It's beautiful.

CONT'D OVER

7. It's not delicious.

ROMANIZATION

1. nâa-rák jang
2. glai jang
3. glâi jang
4. ráawn jang
5. à-ràwy jang
6. sŭuai jang
7. mâi à-ràwy looei

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
เลย	*looei*	used at the end of a statement as an emphasis meaning at all, so much, extremely, completely	particle
ร้อน	*ráawn*	hot	Adjective
อร่อย	*à-ràwy*	delicious	Adjective

สวย	*sŭuai*	beautiful	Adjective

SAMPLE SENTENCES

กระเป๋าสตางค์ใบนั้นแพงมากเลย *grá-bpăo-sà-dtaang bai nán phaaeng mâak looei* "That wallet is so expensive."	อากาศที่เมืองไทยร้อน และชื้น *aa-gàat thîi muueang-thai ráawn láe chúuen* "The weather in Thailand is hot and humid."
ดวงอาทิตย์กำลังแผดเผาทะเลทรายที่ร้อน *duuang-aa-thít gam-lang phàaet-phăo thá-lee-saai thîi ráawn* "The sun is heating the hot desert."	ผู้หญิงกำลังเพลิดเพลินกับพิซซ่าที่อร่อย *phûu-yĭng gam-lang phlôoet-phlooen gàp phít-sâa thîi à-ràwy* "The woman is enjoying delicious pizza."

ขาของเธอสวยมาก
khăa khăawng thooe sŭuai mâak

"Her legs are so beautiful."

GRAMMAR

In today's lesson we'll cover some high-frequency adjectives to help you express yourself in various situations.

In Thai, "It's delicious" is *à-ràwy jang*. The first word *à-ràwy* means "delicious" followed by *jang* which means "quite." Therefore, *à-ràwy jang* is equivalent to the English phrase "It's delicious." Since most people would say "It's delicious" in quite an informal setting, we don't need to add *khâ* or *khráp* at the end of the phrase. However, if you want to be formal, you can do so.

Now let's go over some other adjectives that you can use with the pattern just introduced. Let's try "hot." In Thai, "It's hot" is *ráawn jang*. There is some similarity between this phrase and the phrase we just learnt. We have the adjective followed by *jang* and that becomes a phrase we use to express how we feel. In this phrase, the word *ráawn* means "hot" so *ráawn jang* means "It's hot."

In Thai, "It's cold" is *yen jang*. The word "yen" means "cold" therefore *yen jang* means "It's cold." However, this phrase is used to describe some object that is cold or chilly weather. If you want to say "It's cold" as if it's freezing, you may say *nǎao jang* instead.

"It's near" is *glâi jang*. The word *glâi* means "near" therefore *glâi jang* means "It's near."

How about "It's far"? In Thai, "It's far" is *glai jang*. This word *glai* which means "far" is very familiar to the word *glâi* which means "near." But in the word *glai,* which means, "far" the tone is neutral while in the word *glâi*, which means "near," the tone is falling.

"It's cute" in Thai is *nâa-rák jang*. The word *nâa-rák* means "cute" therefore *nâa-rák jang* means "It's cute." You can use this phrase to describe something cute or pretty.

"It's beautiful" is *sŭuai jang*. Now you have to be careful. This is a critical word that you have to get the tone right. In the word *sŭuai*, the tone is rising. This is a classic word that foreigners always mispronounce and turn the meaning upside down. Most foreigners say *suuai,* which means "bad luck" which could get you in trouble if you meant to say "beautiful." In the word *sŭuai,* which means "beautiful," the tone is rising. For the word *suuai,* which means "bad luck," the tone is neutral.

Now let's take a look at the negative. You can turn all the positive phrases we just learnt into negatives by adding the word *mâi* in the beginning of the phrase then change *jang* to *looei*. For example, "It's not delicious" is *mâi à-ràwy looei*. The first word *mâi* means "no" or "negative" followed by *à-ràwy* which means "delicious." The last word *looei* means "passing by" but in this phrase it means nothing but to make the phrase smoother. Therefore, *mâi à-ràwy looei* means "It's not delicious."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip

Thai is a tonal language. However, when you put together words into a phrase, getting the tone not quite right is not always a problem except some words. However, for a beginner, speaking in a complete phrase without getting all tones right would actually be enough to be understood. Generally, the Thai language has 5 different tones. Even Thai people sometimes get the tone wrongs. We also change the tone depends on our mood, situation and accent.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #57
Thai Home Visit

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
4 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

#57

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ขอเข้าไปข้างในได้ไหมคะ
2. ขอเข้าไปข้างในได้ไหมครับ
3. เข้ามาสิคะ
4. เข้ามาสิครับ
5. มีของเล็กๆน้อยๆมาฝากค่ะ
6. มีของเล็กๆน้อยๆมาฝากครับ

ENGLISH

1. May I come in? (female)
2. May I come in? (male)
3. Please come in! (female)
4. Please come in! (male)
5. I have a small gift for you. (female)
6. I have a small gift for you. (male)

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. khăaw khâo bpai khâang nai dâai măi khá

2. khăaw khâo bpai khâang nai dâai măi khráp

3. khâo maa sì khá

4. khâo maa sì khráp

5. mii khăawng lék-lék náawy-náawy maa fàak khâ

6. mii khăawng lék-lék náawy-náawy maa fàak khráp

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
มี	*mii*	to have	verb
เล็กๆน้อยๆ	*lék-lék náawy-náawy*	small	phrase
ขอ	*khăaw*	May I/we...? (used to ask for permission)	verb
ค่ะ	*khâ*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is female	particle

ครับ	*khráp*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is a male	particle

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ชาวบ้านคนนั้นมีหมูหกสิบตัว *chaao-bâan khon nán mii mŭu hòk-sìp dtuua* "That villager has sixty pigs."	มันเป็นเพียงความผิดเล็กๆน้อยๆ มองข้ามไม่ได้เชียวหรือ *man bpen phiiang khwaam-phìt lék-lék náawy-náawy maawng khâam mâi-dâai chiiao rŭue* "It was only a small mistake -- can't you just ignore it?"
ขอดิฉันนั่งตรงนี้ได้ไหมคะ *khăaw dì-chăn nâng dtrong-níi dâai-măi khá* "May I sit here?"	ดิฉันเป็นครูค่ะ *dì-chăn bpen khruu khâ* "I'm a teacher."
เจอกันใหม่พรุ่งนี้ สวัสดีค่ะ *jooe gan mài phrûng-níi sà-wàt-dii khâ* "See you again tomorrow. Good-bye."	ขอบคุณมากค่ะ *khàawp-khun mâak khâ* "Thank you very much."
สบายดีไหมครับ *sà-baai-dii măi khráp* "How are you?"	สวัสดีครับ ไม่ได้เจอกันตั้งนาน *sà-wàt-dii khráp mâi-dâi jooe gan dtâng-naan* "Hello! Long time no see!"
ไม่เป็นไรครับ *mâi-bpen-rai khráp* "No problem."	ผมเป็นนักวิจัยครับ *phŏm bpen nák-wí-jai khráp* "I am a researcher."

GRAMMAR

In today's lesson we'll introduce you to a phrase that you'll need if you plan on stopping by to visit any friends in Thailand! Today we will provide you with the phrases needed to get inside, and the replies you can expect to hear.

In Thai, "May I come in?" is *khăaw khâo bpai khâang nai dâai măi khá* for women and men say *khăaw khâo bpai khâang nai dâai măi khráp.* The first word *khăaw* means "ask for" followed by *khâo bpai,* which means "get in." The next word *khâang nai* means "inside" while *dâai măi* means "May?" as a question. Therefore, *khăaw khâo bpai khâang nai dâai măi khá* and *khăaw khâo bpai khâang nai dâai măi khráp* are equivalent to the English phrase "May I come in?"

The response to this phrase should be something to indicate that you're accepted like "Please come in!" which in Thai is *khâo maa sì khá* for women and men say *khâo maa sì khráp*. The first word *khâo* means "enter," followed by *maa* which means "come." The next word *sì* together with *khá* or *khráp* means "please." Therefore, *khâo maa sì khá* and *khâo maa sì khráp* literally mean "Please come in!"

In many households, it's generally a good idea to get a gift for your home visit. Anything will do, usually something small as a token of your appreciation.

In Thai, "I have a small gift for you" is *mii khăawng lék-lék náawy-náawy maa fàak khâ* for women and men say *mii khăawng lék-lék náawy-náawy maa fàak khráp*. The first word *mii* means "have," followed by a long word *khăawng lék-lék náawy-náawy* which means "a little something." The next word *maa fàak* means "give" as in giving a gift. *Khâ* or *khráp* is added to make this phrase more polite. Therefore, *mii khăawng lék-lék náawy-náawy maa fàak khâ* and *mii khăawng lék-lék náawy-náawy maa fàak khráp* is equivalent to the English phrase "I have a small gift for you."

I often use this phrase *mii khăawng lék-lék náawy-náawy maa fàak khráp* whenever I visit someone I care about such as my friend's parents or my teacher. It has become an international custom that you should bring a little something when visiting others. However, you won't be perceived as rude or disrespectful if you don't bring anything.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip

Thai culture believes in seniority. The word seniority is not limited to someone older but also someone of higher social status, professional status or someone perceived to be higher. It has become a custom that when visiting someone important, one should appear to be of lower status by offering some gift. However, it is not all about the gift but also the way one

presents the gift, talks, and carries oneself during the visit that counts.

ThaiPod101.com

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #58 Renting A Car in Thailand

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
3 Romanization
4 Vocabulary
4 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

#58

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ขอเช่ารถค่ะ
2. ขอเช่ารถครับ
3. ขอเช่าจักรยานค่ะ
4. ขอเช่าจักรยานครับ
5. ขอเช่าสกูเตอร์ค่ะ
6. ขอเช่าสกูเตอร์ครับ
7. ต้องคืนเมื่อไหร่คะ
8. ต้องคืนเมื่อไหร่ครับ
9. คืนที่ไหนคะ
10. คืนที่ไหนครับ

ENGLISH

1. I'd like to rent a car please. (female)
2. I'd like to rent a car please. (male)

CONT'D OVER

3. I'd like to rent a bike please. (female)

4. I'd like to rent a bike please. (male)

5. I'd like to rent a scooter, please. (female)

6. I'd like to rent a scooter, please. (male)

7. When must I return it? (female)

8. When must I return it? (male)

9. Where do I return it? (female)

10. Where do I return it? (male)

ROMANIZATION

1. khăaw châo rót khâ

2. khăaw châo rót khráp

3. khăaw châo jàk-grà-yaan khâ

4. khăaw châo jàk-grà-yaan khráp

5. khăaw châo sà-guu-dtôoe khâ

6. khăaw châo sà-guu-dtôoe khráp

CONT'D OVER

7. dtâwng khuuen mûuea-rài khá

8. dtâwng khuuen mûuea-rài khráp

9. khuuen thîi-năi khá

10. khuuen thîi-năi khráp

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
เช่า	*châo*	to rent	Verb
คืน	*khuuen*	to return	Verb
จักรยาน	*jàk-grà-yaan*	bike, bicycle	noun
ต้อง	*dtâwng*	must	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ดิฉันต้องการเช่าห้องใกล้ๆกับสนามบิน *dì-chăn dtâwng-gaan châo hâwng glâi-glâi gàp sà-năam-bin.* "I want to rent a room near the airport."	ดิฉันจะคืนให้คุณภายในวันจันทร์ที่จะถึงนี้ *dì-chăn ja khuuen hâi khun phaai-nai wan-jan thîi jà thŭeng níi* "I'll return it to you by next Monday."
ดิฉันเรียนรู้ที่จะขี่จักรยานตอนอายุ 7 ขวบ *dì-chăn riian-rúu thîi jà khìi jàk-grà-yaan dtaawn aa-yú jèt khùuap* "I learned how to ride a bike when I was 7 years old."	ดิฉันต้องไปแล้ว *dì-chăn dtâwng bpai láaeo* "I must go now."

GRAMMAR

In today's lesson we'll introduce you to a phrase that will help you get to the places you need to be! In some places trains and subways are the way to travel, but it's also very useful to know how to rent a car, scooter, or bicycle.

In Thai, "I'd like to rent a car, please" is *khăaw châo rót khâ* for women and men say *khăaw châo rót khráp*. The first word *khăaw* means "ask for" followed by *châo,* which means "rent." The last word *rót* means "car" while *khâ* or *khráp* is added to make this phrase more polite. Therefore, *khăaw châo rót khâ* and *khăaw châo rót khráp* are equivalent to the English phrase "I'd like to rent a car, please."

Now we'll look at the words for other vehicles to open up your transportation options. In Thai, the word for "bicycle" is *jàk-grà-yaan*. Now we take the previous phrase we just learnt and replace the word *rót* with *jàk-grà-yaan* and we can rent a bicycle. In Thai, "I'd like to rent a bicycle, please" is *khăaw châo jàk-grà-yaan khâ* and *khăaw châo jàk-grà-yaan khráp*.

Now let's rent something a little faster -- a scooter! And I'm telling you, the word for scooter in Thai is pretty easy. It's *sà-guu-dtôoe*. Yes, it's another English word we borrow. Therefore, in Thai "I'd like to rent a scooter, please" is *khăaw châo sà-guu-dtôoe khâ* and *khăaw châo sà-guu-dtôoe khráp*.

If you're renting something, it's also important to know when you must return it! Therefore we're giving you a phrase you can use to make sure you return it on time.

In Thai, "When must I return it?" is *dtâwng khuuen mûuea-rài khá* and men say *dtâwng khuuen mûuea-rài khráp*. The first word *dtâwng* means "must," followed by *khuuen,* which means "return." The next word *mûuea-rài* means "when" while *khá* or *khráp* is added to make the phrase more polite. Therefore, *dtâwng khuuen mûuea-rài khá* and *dtâwng khuuen mûuea-rài khráp* literally mean "When must I return it?"

And finally, you may want to return it at a different location. In Thai, "Where do I return it?" is *khuuen thîi-năi khá* and men say *khuuen thîi-năi khráp*. The first word *khuuen* means "return," followed by *thîi-năi* which means "where" while *khá* or *khráp* is added to make the phrase more polite. Therefore, *khuuen thîi-năi khá* and *khuuen thîi-năi khráp* literally mean "Where do I return it?"

Renting a car in Thailand is a good idea so that you can see around town. However, GPS units are not really used in Thailand, therefore you may have to rely on a paper map. Moreover, the street system in Thailand is a little complicated. Even a local like me gets lost. Before taking off, make sure you plan well ahead.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Quick Tip

Most places required you to put a deposit for renting a car, scooter, or bicycle. You will receive this amount of money back when you return the vehicle. In same case if the vehicle is only limited to use within the area, you might have to leave your ID instead of a cash deposit. Don't leave your passport but rather your driving license that has your name written in English.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #59 Politely Declining in Thai

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar

#59

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ไม่เป็นไรค่ะ
2. ไม่เป็นไรค่ะครับ
3. ไม่เป็นไรค่ะ ขอบคุณค่ะ
4. ไม่เป็นไรครับ ขอบคุณครับ

ENGLISH

1. It's ok.(female)
2. It's ok.(male)
3. No, thank you.(female)
4. No, thank you.(male)

ROMANIZATION

1. mâi bpen rai khâ
2. mâi bpen rai khráp
3. mâi bpen rai khâ khàawp-khun khâ

CONT'D OVER

4. mâi bpen rai khráp khàawp-khun khráp

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ไม่เป็นไร	*mâi-bpen-rai*	It's okay. / No problem.	Expression
ขอบคุณ	*khàawp-khun*	Thank you.	Expression
ค่ะ	*khâ*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is female	particle
ครับ	*khráp*	particle added at the end of the sentence or phrase in order to increase the level of politeness when the speaker is a male	particle

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ไม่เป็นไรครับ *mâi-bpen-rai khráp* "No problem."	ขอบคุณมากสำหรับความช่วยเหลือ *khàawp-khun mâak săm-ràp khwaam-chûuai lŭuea* "Thank you so much for your help."

ขอบคุณมากนะคะ *khàawp-khun mâak ná khá* "Thank you very much."	ดิฉันเป็นครูค่ะ *dì-chăn bpen khruu khâ* "I'm a teacher."
เจอกันใหม่พรุ่งนี้ สวัสดีค่ะ *jooe gan mài phrûng-níi sà-wàt-dii khâ* "See you again tomorrow. Good-bye."	ขอบคุณมากค่ะ *khàawp-khun mâak khâ* "Thank you very much."
สบายดีไหมครับ *sà-baai-dii măi khráp* "How are you?"	สวัสดีครับ ไม่ได้เจอกันตั้งนาน *sà-wàt-dii khráp mâi-dâi jooe gan dtâng-naan* "Hello! Long time no see!"
ไม่เป็นไรครับ *mâi-bpen-rai khráp* "No problem."	ผมเป็นนักวิจัยครับ *phŏm bpen nák-wí-jai khráp* "I am a researcher."

GRAMMAR

In this lesson we'll introduce you to some useful phrases for when you've had enough, or want to turn something down politely. One of these phrases just may make your trip!

In Thai, to politely say no is *mâi bpen rai khâ* for women and men say *mâi bpen rai khráp*. The first word *mâi* means "no" followed by *bpen rai,* which means "matter." Altogether, this phrase literally means "Doesn't matter" but with Thai culture, this phrase then is equivalent to the English phrase "It's ok."

Now you might like to add "Thank you" after you say no. Do you still remember how to say thank you in Thai? For women, it's *khàawp-khun khâ* and men say *khàawp-khun khráp*. Therefore, "No, thank you" for women is *mâi bpen rai khâ khàawp-khun khâ*, while men say *mâi bpen rai khráp khàawp-khun khráp*.

These two phrases can be used together when you want to politely decline some offer such as some kind of invitation to join a meal, when someone offers to help you, or even when you had enough food while someone offers you more. This phrase simply helps you get out of something you don't want without a need to explain why, while remaining polite.

The phrase *mâi bpen rai* can also be used separately to respond a question like "Are you ok?", "I'm sorry" or even a "Thank you!" For example, if someone accidently bumps you and he says *khăaw-thôot khráp,* which is "I'm sorry," you can quickly say *mâi bpen rai* back to him to indicate that "It's ok." The phrase *mâi bpen rai* is one of the most common phrases in Thailand. I can guarantee that you will hear this phrase very often when traveling to Thailand.

Thai people tend to use the phrase *mâi bpen rai* and *mâi bpen rai khâ khàawp-khun khâ* very often. Sometimes I quickly say *mâi bpen rai khâ khàawp-khun khâ* before I even think if I want to take an offer or not.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S1 #60 Congratulations in Thai

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
3 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
4 Sample Sentences
4 Grammar
5 Cultural Insight

#60

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ยินดีด้วยนะคะ
2. ยินดีด้วยนะครับ
3. ดีใจด้วยนะคะ
4. ดีใจด้วยนะครับ
5. สุขสันต์วันเกิดค่ะ
6. สุขสันต์วันเกิดครับ
7. สุขสันต์วันปีใหม่ค่ะ
8. สุขสันต์วันปีใหม่ครับ

ENGLISH

1. Congratulations! (Female)
2. Congratulations! (Male)
3. I'm glad for you. (Female)
4. I'm glad for you. (Male)
5. Happy Birthday! (Female)

CONT'D OVER

6. Happy Birthday! (Male)

7. Happy New Year! (Female)

8. Happy New Year! (Male)

ROMANIZATION

1. yin-dii dûuai ná khá

2. yin-dii dûuai ná khráp

3. dii-jai dûuai ná khá

4. dii-jai dûuai ná khráp

5. sùk-săn wan-gòoet khâ

6. sùk-săn wan-gòoet khráp

7. sùk-săn wan-bpii-mài khâ

8. sùk-săn wan-bpii-mài khráp

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ยินดีด้วยนะ	*yin-dii dûuai ná*	Congratulations!	expression
ดีใจด้วยนะ	*dii-jai dûuai ná*	I'm glad for you.	expression

สุขสันต์วันเกิด	*sùk-săn wan-gòoet*	Happy Birthday!	expression
สุขสันต์วันปีใหม่	*sùk-săn wan-phii-mài*	Happy New Year!	expression

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ยินดีด้วยที่สำเร็จการศึกษานะคะ *yin-dii dûuai thîi săm-rèt gaan sùek-săa ná khá* "Congratulations on your graduation!"	ดีใจด้วยนะคะที่ในที่สุดคุณก็ได้เจอกับคนที่ใช่สำหรับชีวิตคุณ *dii-jai dûuai ná khá thîi nai thîi sùt khun gâaw dâai jooe gàp khon thîi châi săm-ràp chii-wít khun* "I'm glad for you that you finally found the right one for your life."
สุขสันต์วันเกิดค่ะคุณจอห์น *sùk-săn wan-gòoet khâ khun jaawn* "John, Happy Birthday!"	สุขสันต์วันปีใหม่ค่ะทุกคน *sùk-săn wan-phii-mài khâ thúk-khon* "Everyone, Happy New Year!"

GRAMMAR

Today we are going to introduce you to some phrases ideal for special occasions that you can use with Thai speakers anywhere in the world! So whether you're sending an e-mail across the globe, or saying it in person, the following phrases for celebratory events will allow you to express your sentiments in Thai.

In Thai, "Congratulations!" is *yin-dii dûuai ná khá* for women and men say *yin-dii dûuai ná khráp*. The first word *yin-dii* means "congratulate," followed by *dûuai,* which means "altogether." The next word *ná* means "please" but in this case is added to make the phrase smoother. Therefore, *yin-dii dûuai ná khá* and *yin-dii dûuai ná khráp* literally mean "Congratulations!"

There's also another way to say you are happy for them. In Thai, "I'm glad for you" is *dii-jai dûuai ná khá* for women and men say *dii-jai dûuai ná khráp*. The first word *dii-jai* means "glad," followed by *dûuai,* which means "altogether." *Ná* is added to make the phrase smoother while *khá* or *khráp* is added to make the phrase polite. Therefore, *dii-jai dûuai ná*

khá and *dii-jai dûuai ná khráp* is equivalent to the English phrase "I'm glad for you."

There is no significant difference between *yin-dii dûuai ná* and *dii-jai dûuai ná*. Both phrases can be used to congratulate someone, although *yin-dii dûuai ná* or "Congratulations!" is more official than *dii-jai dûuai ná,* which means "I'm glad for you."

Let's look at some other phrases that might come in handy. In Thai, "Happy Birthday" is *sùk-săn wan-gòoet khâ* for women and men say *sùk-săn wan-gòoet khráp*. The word *sùk-săn* means "merry" while *wan-gòoet* means "birthday" Therefore, *sùk-săn wan-gòoet khâ* and *sùk-săn wan-gòoet khráp* literally mean "Happy birthday!"

Now let's look at what to say on a festival. How about "Happy New Year!" In Thai, "Happy New Year" for women is *sùk-săn wan-bpii-mài kha* and for men *sùk-săn wan-bpii-mài khráp*. As you may guess, *wan-bpii-mài* is "New Year," therefore, *sùk-săn wan-bpii-mài khâ* for women and for men *sùk-săn wan-bpii-mài khráp*" mean "Happy New Year!"

And the last one, "Merry Christmas." You can simply use the English phrase "Merry Christmas" as Thai people also use it as well. That may be because Christianity is not a dominant religion in Thailand but rather Buddhism is. However, whatever the occasion may be, I hope you have a great time.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

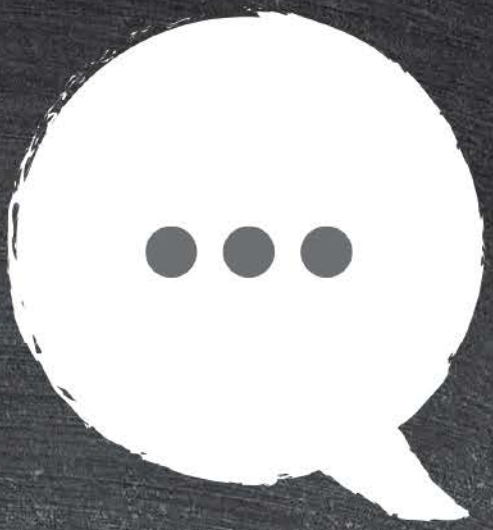
Quick Tip

Thai has so many words for happiness. That could be because we enjoy celebrating so much. Like many other languages, words that have the same meaning are often used in different situations depending on the custom. The word *dii-jai* is mostly used for general happiness such as something was lost and then found, while *yin-dii* is more for special occasions such as weddings or promotions. *Sùk-săn* is mostly used on festivals.

ThaiPod101.com

If you love the Thai language, then you'll love this!

Get our Complete Thai Learning Program at **ThaiPod101.com.**



- Speak Thai From Your First Lesson
- Access hundreds of Audio & Video Courses by Real Teachers
- Get FREE New Lessons Every Week
- Learn Anywhere, Anytime on Any Android Device or Computer

Go to
ThaiPod101.com
and sign up for your

FREE

Lifetime Account!

ThaiPod101.com

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Thai Vocabulary S1 #1 National Holidays

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Cultural Insight

1

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. วันที่สำคัญที่สุด 5 วัน ของประเทศไทยได้แก่วันอะไรบ้าง?

2. 1. วันมาฆบูชา

3. 2. วันสงกรานต์

4. 3. วันแรงงานแห่งชาติ

5. 4. วันแม่

6. 5. วันพ่อ

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most important public holidays in Thailand?

2. 1. Magha Puja Day

3. 2. Songkran Day

4. 3. National Labor Day

5. 4. Mother's day (Her Majesty the Queen's Birthday)

6. 5. Father's day (HM the King's Birthday)

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five most important public holidays in Thailand?
2. 1. wan maa-khá-buu-chaa
3. 2. wan sŏng-graan
4. 3. wan raaeng-ngaan haeng chaat
5. 4. wan mâae
6. 5. wan phâaw

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
วันแรงงานแห่งชาติ	*wan raaeng-ngaan haeng chaat*	National Labor Day	
วันแม่	*wan mâae*	Mother's day (Her Majesty the Queen's Birthday)	
วันพ่อ	*wan phâaw*	Father's day (His Majesty the King's Birthday)	
วันมาฆบูชา	*wan maa-khá-buu-chaa*	Magha Puja Day	
วันสงกรานต์	*wan sŏng-graan*	Songkran Day	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

วันแรงงานแห่งชาติ คือวันที่ 1 พฤษภาคม ของทุกปี *wan raaeng-ngaan haeng chaat khuue wan thîi nùeng phrúet-sà-phaa-khom khăawng thúk bpii* "National Labor Day is on the first of May."	คนไทยมอบดอกมะลิให้กับคุณแม่ของพวกเขาในวันแม่ *khon-thai mâawp dàawk má-li`hâi gàp khun-mâae khăawng phûuak-khăo nai wan-mâae* "Thai people give their mothers jasmine flowers on Mother's day."
วันที่ 5 ธันวาคม คือวันคล้ายวันพระราชสมภพของในหลวง *wan-thîi hâa than-waa-khom khuue wan khláai wan phrá-râat-chá-sŏm-phóp khăawng nai-lŭuang* "December 5th is the king's birthday."	ฉันจะไปทำบุญที่วัดในวันมาฆบูชา *chăn jà bpai tham-boon thîi wát nai wan maa-khá-buu-chaa* "I will go make an offering at a temple on Magha Puja Day."
ในวันหยุดวันสงกรานต์ทุกคนเล่นสาดน้ำกัน *nai wan-yùt wan-sŏng-graan thúk-khon lên sàat náam gan* "On Songkran Day everyone splashes each other with water."	หลายพันคนมาเที่ยวเชียงใหม่ในวันสงกรานต์ทุกปี *lăai phan khon maa thîiao chiiang mài nai wan sŏng-graan thúk bpii* "Many thousands of people come to Chiang Mai on Songkran Day each year."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Magha Puja Day

Magha Puja Day was created when 1250 monks met with Buddha.

2. Songkran Day

Songkran Day is celebrated as the traditional New Year's holiday in Thailand.

3. National Labor Day

This is a holiday for all working people in Thailand. Many offices and businesses are closed.

4. Mother's day (Her Majesty the Queen's Birthday)

Jasmine is a symbol of Mother's day which represent pure love for one's mother.

5. Father's day (HM the King's Birthday)

Thai people wear pink shirts on December 5th every year to show loyalty towards the king. Pink is the color of His Majesty the King.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Thai Vocabulary S1 #2 Food

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Cultural Insight

2

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. อาหาร 5 อย่าง ที่เป็นที่นิยมของประเทศไทย ได้แก่อะไรบ้าง?

2. 1. ต้มยำกุ้ง

3. 2. ผัดไทย

4. 3. ส้มตำ

5. 4. แกงมัสมั่นไก่

6. 5. ข้าวซอย

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular foods in Thailand?

2. 1. Spicy Shrimp Soup

3. 2. Stir-fried Thai Noodles

4. 3. Thai Papaya Salad

5. 4. Chicken Mussaman Curry

6. 5. Northern-style Thai Noodles

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five most popular foods in Thailand?
2. 1. dtôm yam gûng
3. 2. phàt thai
4. 3. sôm-dtam
5. 4. gaaeng mát-sà-màn gài
6. 5. khâo-soi

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English
แกงมัสมั่นไก่	*gaaeng mát-sà-màn gài*	Chicken Mussaman Curry
ข้าวซอย	*khâo-soi*	Northern style Thai noodles
ต้มยำกุ้ง	*dtôm yam gûng*	Spicy Shrimp Soup
ผัดไทย	*phàt thai*	Pad Thai (Stir-fried Thai noodles)
ส้มตำ	*sôm-dtam*	Thai papaya salad

SAMPLE SENTENCES

แกงมัสมั่นไก่เต็มไปด้วยเครื่องเทศ *gaaeng mát-sà-màn gài dtem bpai dûuai khrûueang-thêet* "Chicken Mussaman Curry is full of herbs."	ข้าวซอยที่มีชื่อเสียงอยู่ที่จังหวัดเชียงใหม่ *khâo-soi thîi à-ràwy thîi sùt yùu thîi jang-wàt chiiang-mài* "The famous northern style Thai noodles are in Chiang Mai."
ต้มยำกุ้งเปรี้ยว *dtôm-yam-gûng bprîiao* "Spicy Shrimp Soup is sour."	ชาวต่างชาติชอบทานผัดไทย *chaao-dtàang-châat châawp thaan phàt-thai* "Many non-Thai people like Pad Thai."

ส้มตำเป็นอาหารที่มีชื่อเสียงของภาคอีสาน

sôm-dtam bpen aa-hăan thîi mii chûue-sĭiang khăawng phâak ii-săan

"Thai papaya salad is the most well-known food of the northeast region of Thailand."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Spicy Shrimp Soup

Spicy Shrimp Soup is one of the most famous Thai foods.

2. Stir-fried Thai Noodles

Nowadays, Pad Thai has become a widespread staple food and is one of Thailand's national dishes.

3. Thai Papaya Salad

Thai papaya salad is often served with sticky rice and grilled chicken.

4. Chicken Mussaman Curry

In 2011, CNNGo ranked Chicken Mussaman Curry as number one in the World's 50 most delicious foods.

5. Northern-style Thai Noodles

Northern-style Thai noodles is popular as a street dish, but is not frequently served in Thai restaurants abroad.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Thai Vocabulary S1 #3 Drinks

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Cultural Insight

3

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. เครื่องดื่ม 5 อย่าง ที่เป็นที่นิยมของประเทศไทย ได้แก่อะไรบ้าง?

2. 1. ชาดำเย็น

3. 2. น้ำกระเจี๊ยบ

4. 3. น้ำมะตูม

5. 4. ชาตะไคร้

6. 5. สาโท

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular beverages in Thailand?

2. 1. Thai iced tea without milk

3. 2. Roselle juice

4. 3. Bale fruit juice

5. 4. Lemongrass tea

6. 5. Thai rice wine

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five most popular beverages in Thailand?

2. 1. chaa-dam-yen

3. 2. náam-grà-jíiap

4. 3. náam-má-dtuum

5. 4. chaa-dtà-khrái

6. 5. săa-thoo

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English
ชาดำเย็น	*chaa-dam-yen*	Thai iced tea without milk
น้ำกระเจี๊ยบ	*náam-grà-jíiap*	Roselle juice
น้ำมะตูม	*náam-má-dtuum*	Bale fruit juice
ชาตะไคร้	*chaa-dtà-khrái*	Lemongrass tea
สาโท	*săa-thoo*	Thai rice wine

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ชนิดของชาที่ใช้ในชาดำเย็นคือชาซีลอน *chá-nít khăawng chaa thîi chái nai chaa-dam-yen khuue chaa-sii-lawn* "The type of tea used in Thai iced tea without milk is Ceylon tea."	น้ำกระเจี๊ยบช่วยลดความดันเลือด *náam-grà-jíiap chûuai lót khwaam-dan-lûueat* "Roselle juice helps lower high blood pressure."

น้ำมะตูมหวานชื่นใจ *náam-má-dtuum wăan chûuen-jai* "Bale fruit juice is sweet and refreshing."	ชาตะไคร้มีประโยชน์ต่อร่างกายของคุณ *chaa-dtà-khrái mii bprà-yòot dtaaw râang-gaai* "Lemongrass tea is very good for your health."

สาโททำมาจากข้าวเหนียว
săa-thoo tham maa jàak khâao-nĭiao

"Thai rice wine is made from sticky rice."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Thai iced tea without milk

In Bangkok, there are shops selling Thai iced tea without milk all over the city.

2. Roselle juice

Thailand is one of the largest producers of the Roselle plant, which is used to make juice in Thailand.

3. Bale fruit juice

Bale fruit juice is made from the bale fruit, which is common in Thailand.

4. Lemongrass tea

Cool lemongrass tea is a popular drink served during the hot summer in Thailand.

5. Thai rice wine

Thai rice wine is typically served at room temperature.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Thai Vocabulary S1 #4 Home Cooking

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Cultural Insight

4

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. อาหารทำกินเองที่บ้าน 5 อย่าง ที่เป็นที่นิยมของไทยได้แก่อะไรบ้าง?

2. 1. ข้าวผัด

3. 2. แกงจืดเต้าหู้

4. 3. ผัดกะเพราไก่

5. 4. น้ำพริกปลาทู

6. 5. ไข่เจียว

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular home cooked meals in Thailand?

2. 1. Fried rice

3. 2. Mildly seasoned soup with tofu

4. 3. Stir-fried chicken with holy basil

5. 4. Fried mackerel with shrimp paste sauce

6. 5. Thai-style omelette

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five most popular home cooked meals in Thailand?
2. 1. khâao-phàt
3. 2. gaaeng-jùuet-dtâo-hûu
4. 3. phàt-gà-phrao gài
5. 4. náam-phrík-bplaa-thuu
6. 5. khài-jiiao

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English
ข้าวผัด	*khâao-phàt*	fried rice
แกงจืดเต้าหู้	*gaaeng-jùuet-dtâo-hûu*	Mildly seasoned soup with tofu
ผัดกะเพราไก่	*phàt-gà-phrao gài*	stir-fried chicken with holy basil
น้ำพริกปลาทู	*náam-phrík-bplaa-thuu*	fried mackerel with shrimp paste sauce
ไข่เจียว	*khài-jiiao*	Thai-style omelette

SAMPLE SENTENCES

คนไทยใช้ข้าวหอมมะลิทำข้าวผัด *khon-thai chái khâao-hăawm má-lí tham khâao-phàt* "Thai people use jasmine rice to make fried rice."	แกงจืดเต้าหู้มีแคลอรี่ต่ำ *gaaeng-jùuet-dtâo-hûu mii khaae-laaw-rîi dtàm* "Mildly seasoned soup with tofu is low in calories."
ผัดกะเพราไก่เผ็ดเพราะมีพริก *phàt-gà-phrao gài phèt phráw mii phrík* "Stir-fried chicken with holy basil is spicy because it contains chillies."	คนภาคกลางนิยมรับประทานน้ำพริกปลาทูเป็นอาหารเย็น *khon phâak-glaang ní-yom ráp-bprà-thaan náam-phrík-bplaa-thuu bpen aa-hăan-yen* "People in the central region of Thailand commonly eat fried mackerel with shrimp paste sauce for dinner."

อย่าลืมใส่น้ำปลาเวลาที่คุณทำไข่เจียว
yàa-luuem sài náam-bplaa wee-laa thîi khun tham khài-jiiao

"Don't forget to add fish sauce when you make Thai-style omelettes."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Fried rice

In Thailand you will find many different kinds of fried rice served with various ingredients.

2. Mildly seasoned soup with tofu

Mildly seasoned soup with tofu is made from local ingredients easily found in fresh markets in Thailand.

3. Stir-fried chicken with holy

basil

Stir-fried chicken with holy basil contains minced chicken, Thai holy basil, chillies, garlic and soy sauce.

4. Fried mackerel with shrimp paste sauce

Fried mackerel with shrimp paste sauce is always served with fresh vegetables.

5. Thai style omelette

Thai-style omelettes often contain onion, tomato, and minced pork or shrimp.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Thai Vocabulary S1 #5 Sweets

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Cultural Insight

5

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ของหวาน 5 อย่าง ที่เป็นที่นิยมของประเทศไทย ได้แก่อะไรบ้าง?

2. 1. ลอดช่อง

3. 2. ฝอยทอง

4. 3. กล้วยบวชชี

5. 4. ข้าวเหนียวมะม่วง

6. 5. บัวลอย

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular sweets and desserts in Thailand?

2. 1. Green dessert noodles with coconut milk

3. 2. Candied egg threads

4. 3. Banana in coconut milk

5. 4. Thai sweet sticky rice with mangos

6. 5. Bua Loi

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five most popular sweets and desserts in Thailand?

2. 1. lâawt-châwng

3. 2. fǎwy-thaawng

4. 3. glûuai-bùuat-chii

5. 4. khâao-nǐiao-má-mûuang

6. 5. buua-laawy

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English
ลอดช่อง	*lâawt-châwng*	green dessert noodles with coconut milk
ฝอยทอง	*fǎwy-thaawng*	candied egg threads
กล้วยบวชชี	*glûuai-bùuat-chii*	banana in coconut milk
ข้าวเหนียวมะม่วง	*khâao-nǐiao-má-mûuang*	Thai sweet sticky rice with mangoes
บัวลอย	*buua-laawy*	Bua Loi

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ลอดช่องมักจะเสิร์ฟแบบใส่น้ำแข็ง *lâawt-châwng mák jà sòoeb bpàaep sài náam-khăeng* "Green dessert noodles with coconut milk are usually served cold with ice."	ไข่แดงและน้ำตาลคือส่วนประกอบหลักในการทำฝอยทอง *khài-daaeng láe náam-dtaan khuue sùuan bprà-gàawp làk nai gaan tham făwy-thaawng* "Egg yolks and sugar are the main ingredients in making candied egg threads."
กล้วยน้ำว้า น้ำกะทิ น้ำตาล และเกลือคือส่วนผสมของกล้วยบวชชี *glûuai-náam-wáa náam-gà-thí náam-dtaan láe gluuea khuue sùuan-phà-sŏm khăawng glûuai-bùuat-chii* "Nam Wa, a type of banana, coconut milk, sugar and salt are the ingredients of banana in coconut milk."	ข้าวเหนียวมะม่วงหาทานง่ายในช่วงหน้าร้อน *khâao-nĭiao-má-mûuang hăa thaan ngâai nai chûuang nâa-ráawn* "Thai sweet sticky rice with mangoes is easy to find in the summer."

บัวลอยมีแคลอรี่สูงเพราะมีน้ำกะทิ และน้ำตาลเยอะ
buua-laawy mii khaae-laaw-rîi sŭung phráw mii náam-gà-thí láe mii náam-dtaan yóe

"Bua Loi is high in calories because it contains a lot of coconut milk and sugar."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Green dessert noodles with coconut milk

Thais use pandan leaves to make green dessert noodles with coconut milk, which is why the noodles have a green color.

2. Candied egg threads

Candied egg threads are a sweet dessert drawn into thin strands and boiled in sugar syrup.

3. Banana in coconut milk

A popular warm dessert served in Thailand is banana in coconut milk.

4. Thai sweet sticky rice with mangos

Thai sweet sticky rice with mangos is easy to find in the summer.

5. Bua Loi

Bua Loi is a Thai dessert made from sticky rice power rolled into a small ball and put in sweet coconut milk.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Thai Vocabulary S1 #6 Fruits

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Cultural Insight

6

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ผลไม้ 5 ชนิด ที่เป็นที่นิยมของประเทศไทย ได้แก่อะไรบ้าง?

2. 1. ทุเรียน

3. 2. มะม่วง

4. 3. ฝรั่ง

5. 4. เงาะ

6. 5. มังคุด

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular fruits in Thailand?

2. 1. Durian

3. 2. Mango

4. 3. Guava

5. 4. Rambutan

6. 5. Mangosteen

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five most popular fruits in Thailand?

2. 1. thú-riian

3. 2. má-mûuang

4. 3. fá-ràng

5. 4. ngáw

6. 5. mang-khút

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ทุเรียน	*thú-riian*	durian	
มะม่วง	*má-mûuang*	mango	Noun
ฝรั่ง	*fà-ràng*	guava	noun
เงาะ	*ngáw*	rambutan	
มังคุด	*mang-khút*	mangosteen	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ทุเรียนมีกลิ่นที่แรงมาก *thú-riian mii glìn tîi raaeng mâak* "Durian has a strong smell."	มะม่วงเป็นผลไม้หน้าร้อน *má-mûuang bpen phŏn-lá-máai nâa-ráawn* "Mango is a summer fruit."

ต้นมะม่วงมีมะม่วงห้าสิบเอ็ดลูก *dtôn má-mûuang mii má-mûuang hâa-sìp-èt lûuk* "The mango tree has fifty-one mangoes."	คนไทยยังชอบทานฝรั่งดองอีกด้วย "Thai people also love to eat pickled guava."
มีฝรั่งสองลูกอยู่บนโต๊ะ *mii fà-ràng sǎawng lûuk yùu bon dtó.* "There are two guavas on the table."	เงาะโรงเรียนปลูกมากในจังหวัดสุราษฎร์ธานี *ngáw-roong-rian bplùuk mâak nai jang-wàt sù-râat-thaa-nii* "Rong-Rian rambutans are widely grown in Surat Thani."
เปลือองของมังคุดมีสีม่วง แต่เนื้อมีสีขาว *bplùueak khǎawng mang-khút sǐi mûuang dtàae núuea mii sǐi khǎao* "The rind of mangosteen is purple but the flesh is white."	มังคุดลูกนี้หวานมาก *mang-khút lûuk níi wǎan mâak* "This mangosteen is very sweet."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Durian

Durian is widely known and revered in southeast Asia as the "king of fruits."

2. Mango

Many Thai people enjoy eating raw mango served with a dry salt-and-sugar dip that's seasoned with crushed chili.

3. Guava

Crunchy raw guava is also served with a dry salt-and-sugar dip seasoned with crushed chili.

4. Rambutan

The entire surface of the rambutan is covered with stiff red hairs.

5. Mangosteen

The Mangosteen is considered the "Queen of Tropical Fruits."

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Thai Vocabulary S1 #7 Vegetables and Herbs

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Cultural Insight

7

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. สมุนไพรและผัก 5 ชนิด ที่เป็นที่นิยมของประเทศไทย ได้แก่อะไรบ้าง?

2. 1. ข่า

3. 2. ตะไคร้

4. 3. ใบมะกรูด

5. 4. กะเพรา

6. 5. พริกขี้หนู

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular vegetables in Thailand?

2. 1. Galangal

3. 2. Lemongrass

4. 3. Kaffir lime leaves

5. 4. Holy basil

6. 5. Bird's eye chili

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five most popular vegetables in Thailand?
2. 1. khàa
3. 2. dtà-khrái
4. 3. bai-má-grùut
5. 4. gà-phrao
6. 5. phrík-khîi-nŭu

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English
ข่า	*khàa*	galangal
ตะไคร้	*dtà-khrái*	lemongrass
ใบมะกรูด	*bai-má-grùut*	kaffir lime leaves
กะเพรา	*gà-phrao*	holy basil
พริกขี้หนู	*phrík-khîi-nŭu*	bird's eye chili

SAMPLE SENTENCES

คนไทยชอบกลิ่นของข่าในต้มยำ *khon thai châawp glìn khăawng khàa nai dtôm-yam* "Thai people love the smell of galangal in spicy soups."	ชาตะไคร้ช่วยลดหวัด *chaa-dtà-khrái chûuai lót wàt* "Lemongrass tea helps relieve colds."

พวกเราใช้ใบมะกรูดในการทำแกงเขียวหวาน. *phûuak-rao chái bai-má-grùut nai gaan tham gaaeng-khĭiao-wăan* "We use kaffir lime leaves to make chicken green curry."	กะเพราคือสิ่งที่ทำให้ผัดกะเพรามีรสชาติอร่อย *gà-phrao khuue sìng thîi tham hâi phàt-grà-phrao mii rót-châat à-ràwy* "Holy basil is what makes Pad Kaprao taste delicious."

พริกขี้หนูปลูกได้ดีบนดินร่วนปนทราย
phrík-khîi-nŭu bplùuk dâai dii bon din-rûuan-bpon-saai

"Bird's eye chili grows best in sandy loam soil."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Galangal

Galangal is a type of ginger commonly used in Thai cooking.

2. Lemongrass

Many Thai people enjoy drinking cool lemongrass tea as a refreshment during the summer months.

3. Kaffir lime leaves

Many Thai recipes use kaffir lime leaves.

4. Holy basil

Holy basil has a different smell and flavor than regular basil; it smells hot and spicy and has tiny hairs all over its branches and leaves.

5. Bird's eye chili

Bird's eye chilies are about an inch long and very hot.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Thai Vocabulary S1 #8 Food Souvenirs

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Cultural Insight

8

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. อาหารของฝาก 5 อย่าง ที่เป็นที่นิยมของประเทศไทย ได้แก่อะไรบ้าง?
2. 1. น้ำพริกอ่อง
3. 2. ไส้อั่ว
4. 3. น้ำพริกกุ้งเสียบ
5. 4. หมูหยอง
6. 5. มะม่วงอบแห้ง

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular food souvenirs in Thailand?
2. 1. Northern chili paste
3. 2. Thai sausage
4. 3. Fried Shrimp Paste
5. 4. Shredded pork
6. 5. Dried mango

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five most popular food souvenirs in Thailand?
2. 1. náam phrínk àwng
3. 2. sâi-ùa
4. 3. náam-phrík gûng-sìiap
5. 4. mŭu-yăwng
6. 5. má-mûuang òp-hâaeng

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English
น้ำพริกอ่อง	*náam phrínk àwng*	Northern chili paste
ไส้อั่ว	*sâi-ùa*	Thai sausage
น้ำพริกกุ้งเสียบ	*náam-phrík gûng-sìiap*	fried shrimp paste
หมูหยอง	*mŭu-yăwng*	shredded pork
มะม่วงอบแห้ง	*má-mûuang òp-hâaeng*	dried mango

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ส่วนประกอบหลักของน้ำพริกอ่องคือหมูสับ *sùuan-bprà-gàawp làk khăawng náam phrínk àwng khuue mŭu-sàp* "The main ingredient of Northern chili paste is minced pork."	ไส้อั่วคืออาหารพื้นเมืองทางภาคเหนือของไทย *sâi-ùa khuue aa-hăan phúuen-mueang thaang phâak-nŭuea khăawng thai* "Thai sausage is a traditional food of the Northern region of Thailand."
น้ำพริกกุ้งเสียบเป็นของฝากชื่อดังของเมืองภูเก็ต *náam-phrík gûng-sìiap bpen khăawng-fàak chûue-dang khăawng mueang phuu-gèt* "Fried shrimp paste is a famous food souvenir from Phuket."	โดยทั่วไปแล้วผู้คนรับประทานหมูหยองกับข้าวต้ม *dooi-thûua-bpai láaeo phûu-khon ráp-bprà-thaan mŭu-yăwng gàp khâao-dtôm* "People commonly eat shredded pork with soft-boiled rice."

มะม่วงอบแห้งเป็นของว่างที่ดีต่อสุขภาพ
má-mûuang òp-hâaeng bpen khăawng-wâang thîi dii dtaaw sùk-khà-phâap

"Dried mango is a healthy snack."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Northern chili paste

Northern chili paste is always served with fresh vegetables like cucumber.

2. Thai sausage

Thai sausage is a herb sausage. It is the most authentic symbol of Northern Thai foods.

3. Fried Shrimp Paste

Like other Thai pastes, fried shrimp paste is also served with fresh vegetables.

4. Shredded pork

Shredded pork is often dried and preserved in Thailand.

5. Dried mango

Dried mango is one of the most popular dried fruits in Thailand.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Thai Vocabulary S1 #9 Traditional Culture

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Cultural Insight

9

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. วัฒนธรรม 5 วัฒนธรรม ที่มีชื่อเสียงของประเทศไทย ได้แก่อะไรบ้าง?

2. 1. พิธีโกนผมไฟ

3. 2. พิธีทำบุญขึ้นบ้านใหม่

4. 3. พิธีแต่งงานแบบไทย

5. 4. งานลอยกระทง

6. 5. พิธีไหว้ครู

ENGLISH

1. What are the five best examples of traditional culture in Thailand?

2. 1. Gon Phom Fai ceremony

3. 2. Home blessing ceremony

4. 3. Thai-style wedding ceremony

5. 4. Loy Krathong festival

6. 5. Wai Khru ceremony

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five most popular traditional culture in Thailand?
2. 1. phí-thii goon phom fai
3. 2. phí-thii tham-bun-khûen-bâan-mài
4. 3. phí-thii-dtàeng-ngaan-bpàaep-thai
5. 4. ngaan-laawy-grà-thong
6. 5. phí-thii-wâai-khruu

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English
พิธีโกนผมไฟ	*phí-thii goon phom fai*	Gon Phom Fai ceremony
พิธีทำบุญขึ้นบ้านใหม่	*phí-thii tham-bun-khûen-bâan-mài*	Home blessing ceremony
พิธีแต่งงานแบบไทย	*phí-thii-dtàeng-ngaan-bpàaep-thai*	Thai-style wedding ceremony
งานลอยกระทง	*ngaan-laawy-grà-thong*	Loy Krathong festival
พิธีไหว้ครู	*phí-thii-wâai-khruu*	Wai Khru ceremony

SAMPLE SENTENCES

พิธีโกนผมไฟเป็นพิธีสำหรับเด็กทารกมีอายุครบ 1 เดือน *phí-thii goon phom fai bpen phí-thii săm-ràp dèk-thaa-rók thîi mii aa-yú khróp nùeng duuean* "The Gon Phon Fai ceremony is for babies who are one month old."	พวกเรานิมนต์พระสงฆ์ 9 รูปมาในพิธีทำบุญขึ้นบ้านใหม่ของพวกเรา *phûuak-rao ní-mon phrá-sŏng gâao rûup maa nai phí-thii tham-bun-khûen-bâan-mài khăawng phûuak-rao* "We invited nine monks to our home blessing ceremony."
คู่สมรสมักจะมีงานเลี้ยงสมรสแบบตะวันตก แต่หลังจากการทำพิธีแต่งงานแบบไทย *khûu sŏhm róht mák jà mii ngaan líiang sŏm-rót bpàaep dtà-wan-dtòk dtàae lăng-jàak gaan tham phí-thii-dtàeng-ngaan-bpàaep-thai* "A Thai couple might have a western style wedding party but a traditional Thai style wedding ceremony."	ผู้คนเฉลิมฉลองงานลอยกระทงเป็นประจำทุกปีในวันพระจันทร์เต็มดวงของเดือนพฤศจิกายน *phûu-khon chà-lŏoem chà-lăawng ngaan-laawy-grà-thong bpen bprà-jàm thúk bpii nai wan-phrá-jan-dtem-duuang khăawng duuean phrúet-sà-jì-gaa-yon* "People celebrate the Loy Krathong festival annually on the full moon of November."

ในพิธีไหว้ครู นักเรียนไทยจะนำดอกไม้, ธูป, เทียน จัดใส่พานและมอบให้กับคุณครู
nai phí-thii-wâai-khruu nák-riian Thai jà nam dàawk-máai, thûup, thiian jàt sài phaan láe mâawp hâi gáp khun-khruu

"In the Wai Khru ceremony, Thai students present their teachers with offerings of flowers, joss sticks, and candles arranged on traditional Thai pedestalled trays."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Gon Phom Fai ceremony

Thai people believe that shaving the head of a one-month old baby will bring him or her a lot of luck and joy.

2. Home blessing ceremony

The Thai people hold a home blessing ceremony to respect the spirit of the land, which they believe will protect their house and family.

3. Thai style wedding ceremony

A Thai-style wedding may include various ceremonies like the water pouring ceremony.

4. Loy Krathong festival

The Loy Krathong festival is held to honor and thank the Goddess of Water.

5. Wai Khru ceremony

The Wai Khru ceremony is held to honor teachers.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Thai Vocabulary S1 #10 Historical Figures

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Cultural Insight

10

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. บุคคลสำคัญ 5 ท่าน ที่มีความสำคัญต่อประวัติศาสตร์ไทย ได้แก่ใครบ้าง?

2. 1. สมเด็จพระนเรศวรมหาราช

3. 2. พระบาทสมเด็จพระพุทธยอดฟ้าจุฬาโลกมหาราช

4. 3. พระบาทสมเด็จพระจุลจอมเกล้าเจ้าอยู่หัว

5. 4. พระบาทสมเด็จพระปกเกล้าเจ้าอยู่หัว

6. 5. จอมพลป.พิบูลสงคราม

ENGLISH

1. Who are the five most popular historical figures in Thailand?

2. 1. King Naresuan

3. 2. King Rama I

4. 3. King Rama V

5. 4. King Rama VII

6. 5. Bpor Pibunsongkhram

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. Who are the five most popular historical figures in Thailand?
2. 1. sŏm-dèt-phrá-ná-ree-sŭuan má hăa râat
3. 2. phrá-bàat-sŏm-dèt phrá-phút-thá-yâawt-fáa-jù-laa-lôok-má-hăa-râat
4. 3. phrá-bàat-sŏm-dèt phrá-jun-lá-jaawm-glâao-jâo-yùu-hŭua
5. 4. phrá-bàat-sŏm-dèt phrá-bpòk-glâao-jâo-yùu-hŭua
6. 5. jaawm-phon bpaaw phí-buun-sŏng-khraam

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English
สมเด็จพระนเรศวรมหาราช	*sŏm-dèt-phrá-ná-ree-sŭuan má hăa râat*	King Naresuan
พระบาทสมเด็จพระพุทธยอดฟ้าจุฬาโลกมหาราช	*phrá-bàat-sŏm-dèt phrá-phút-thá-yâawt-fáa-jù-laa-lôok-má-hăa-râat*	King Rama I
พระบาทสมเด็จพระจุลจอมเกล้าเจ้าอยู่หัว	*phrá-bàat-sŏm-dèt phrá-jun-lá-jaawm-glâao-jâo-yùu-hŭua*	King Rama V
พระบาทสมเด็จพระปกเกล้าเจ้าอยู่หัว	*phrá-bàat-sŏm-dèt phrá-bpòk-glâao-jâo-yùu-hŭua*	King Rama VII
จอมพลป.พิบูลสงคราม	*jaawm-phon bpaaw phí-buun-sŏng-khraam*	Bpor Pibunsongkhram

SAMPLE SENTENCES

สมเด็จพระนเรศวรมหาราชคือผู้กู้อิสรภาพของไทยจากพม่า

sŏm-dèt-phrá-ná-ree-sŭuan má hăa râat khuue phûu gûu ìt-sà-rà-phâap khăawng thai jàak phá-mâa

"King Naresuan was the one who freed Siam from Burmese rule."

พระบาทสมเด็จพระพุทธยอดฟ้าจุฬาโลกมหาราชคือพระมหากษัตริย์พระองค์แรกแห่งราชวงศ์จักรี

phrá-bàat-sŏm-dèt phrá-phút-thá-yâawt-fáa-jù-laa-lôok-má-hăa-râat khuue phrá-má-hăa-gà-sàt phrá-ong râaek hàeng râat-chá-wong jàk-grii

"King Rama I is the first king of the Chakri dynasty."

พระบาทสมเด็จพระจุลจอมเกล้าเจ้าอยู่หัวคืออผู้ทรงเลิกทาสในประเทศไทย

phrá-bàat-sŏm-dèt phrá-jun-lá-jaawm-glâao-jâo-yùu-hŭua khuue phûu song lôoek thâat nai bprà-thêet thai

"King Rama V abolished slavery in Thailand."

พระบาทสมเด็จพระปกเกล้าเจ้าอยู่หัวพระราชทานรัฐธรรมนูญฉบับแรกให้กับประชาชนในปี 2475

phrá-bàat-sŏm-dèt phrá-bpòk-glâao-jâo-yùu-hŭua phrá-râat-chá-thaan rát-thà-tham-má-nuun chà-bàp ràaek hâi gàp bprà-chaa-chon nai bpii săawng-phan sìi-ráawy jèt-sìp-hâa

"King Rama VII granted the first constitution of Thailand to his people in 1932."

จอมพล.ป.พิบูลสงครามเป็นนายกรัฐมนตรีที่ดำรงตำแหน่งยาวนานที่สุด

jaawm-phon bpaaw phí-buun-sŏng-khraam bpen naa-yók-rát-thá-mon-dtrii thîi dam-rong dtam-nàeng yaao-naan thîi-sùt

"Bpor Pibunsongkhram is the longest serving Prime Minister in Thailand."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. King Naresuan

King Naresuan was one of the most revered monarchs of Siam.

2. King Rama I

King Rama I ruled Thailand between 1782 and 1809.

3. King Rama V

King Rama V was known in his day as the Royal Buddha.

4. King Rama VII

King Rama VII was the only king of Siam to abdicate the throne.

5. Bpor Pibunsongkhram

Bpor Pibunsongkhram was Prime Minister of Thailand for fourteen years.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Thai Vocabulary S1 #11 Animals

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Cultural Insight

11

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. สัตว์ 5 ชนิด ที่เป็นที่รู้จักของประเทศไทย ได้แก่ชนิดใดบ้าง?

2. 1. ช้าง

3. 2. ควาย

4. 3. แมววิเชียรมาศ

5. 4. หมาไทยหลังอาน

6. 5. ลิงกัง

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular animals in Thailand?

2. 1. Elephant

3. 2. Water buffalo

4. 3. Siamese cat

5. 4. Siamese Ridgeback dog

6. 5. Southern pig-tailed macaque

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five most popular animals in Thailand?

2. 1. cháang

3. 2. khwaai

4. 3. maaeo wí-chiian-mâat

5. 4. mǎa thai lǎng-aan

6. 5. ling-gang

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ควาย	*khwaai*	water buffalo	
แมววิเชียรมาศ	*maaeo wí-chiian-mâat*	Siamese cat	
หมาไทยหลังอาน	*mǎa thai lǎng-aan*	Siamese ridgeback dog	
ลิงกัง	*ling-gang*	Southern pig-tailed macaque	
ช้าง	*cháang*	elephant	Noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

มีควายมากในจังหวัดสุพรรณบุรี *mii khwaai mâak nai jang-wàt sù-phan-bù-rii* "There are many water buffaloes in Suphan Buri province."	แมววิเชียรมาศมีตาสีฟ้า *maaeo wí-chiian-mâat mii dtaa-sǐi-fáa* "Siamese cats have blue eyes."
หมาไทยหลังอานมีถิ่นกำเนิดอยู่ในภาคตะวันออกของประเทศไทย *măa thai lăng-aan mii thìn-gam-nòoet yùu nai phâak dtà-wan-àawk khăawng bprà-thêet-thai* "Siamese ridgeback dogs originally come from the Eastern region of Thailand."	ลิงกังสามารถเก็บมะพร้าวจากต้นมะพร้าวได้ *ling-gang săa-mâat gèp má-phráao jàak dtôn má-phráao dâai* "Southern pig-tailed macaques can pick coconuts from coconut trees."
ช้างคือสัตว์ประจำชาติของประเทศไทย *cháang khuue sàt bprà-jam-châat khăawng bprà-thêet-thai* "The elephant is the national animal of Thailand."	ลูกช้างกำลังเล่นเปรอะเปื้อนมอมแมมอยู่ในสวนสัตว์ *lûuk-cháang gam-lang lên bpròe-bpûuean maawm-maaem yùu nai sŭuan-sàt* "The baby elephant is playing with dirt in a zoo."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Elephant

In the past, Thai elephants were trained to become war or transport animals.

2. Water buffalo

Water buffaloes are used to plough the rice fields in Thailand.

3. Siamese

cat

The Siamese cat is one of the breeds drawn and written about in the Cat Poems, which were written in Thailand between the 14th and 18th centuries.

4. Siamese Ridgeback dog

The Siamese Ridgeback Dog is a previously unknown breed outside of Thailand.

5. Southern pig-tailed macaque

The Southern pig-tailed macaque is a species of monkey found in Thailand and its neighboring countries.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Thai Vocabulary S1 #12 Plants

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Cultural Insight

12

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. พันธุ์ไม้ 5 ชนิด ที่เป็นที่นิยมของประเทศไทย ได้แก่อะไรบ้าง?

2. 1. มะลิ

3. 2. กล้วยไม้

4. 3. กุหลาบ

5. 4. ดอกอันชัญ

6. 5. ต้นจามจุรี

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular plants in Thailand?

2. 1. Jasmine

3. 2. Orchid

4. 3. Rose

5. 4. Butterfly pea

6. 5. Monkey pod

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five most popular plants in Thailand?
2. 1. má-lí
3. 2. glûuai-máai
4. 3. gù-làap
5. 4. dàawk-an-chan
6. 5. dtôn-jaam-jù-rii

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English
มะลิ	*má-lí*	jasmine
กล้วยไม้	*glûuai-máai*	orchid
กุหลาบ	*gù-làap*	rose
ดอกอันชัญ	*dàawk-an-chan*	butterfly pea
ต้นจามจุรี	*dtôn-jaam-jù-rii*	monkey pod

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ดอกมะลิคือสัญลักษณ์ของวันแม่ในประเทศไทย *dàawk-má-lí khuue săn-yá-lák khăawng wan-mâae nai bprà-thêet-thai* "Jasmine is the symbol of Mother's day in Thailand."	กล้วยไม้มากกว่า 1,000 ชนิดถูกพบในประเทศไทย *glûuai-máai mâak gwàa nùeng-phan chá-nít thùuk phóp nai bprà-thêet-thai* "More than 1,000 types of orchid are found in Thailand."
ปากคลองตลาด คือตลาดดอกไม้ของกรุงเทพ ที่ที่คุณสามารถหาซื้อดอกกุหลาบและดอกไม้อื่นๆ ได้อย่างง่ายดาย "Pak Khlong Talat is the flower market of Bangkok, where you can easily buy roses and other flowers. "	ในประเทศไทย มีแชมพูและครีมนวดผมที่ทำมาจากดอกอันชัญ *nai bprà-thêet-thai mii chaaem-phuu láe khriim-nûuat-phŏm thîi tham maa-jàak dàawk-an-chan* "In Thailand, there are shampoos and conditioners that are made using the butterfly pea flower."

มีต้นจามจุรีมากมายในจุฬาลงกรณ์มหาวิทยาลัย
mii dtôn-jaam-jù-rii mâak-maai nai jù-laa-long-gaawn-má-hăa-wít-thá-yaa-lai

"There are a lot of monkey pods at Chulalongkorn university."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Jasmine

One of the most common flowers in Thailand is jasmine.

2. Orchid

One of Thailand’s most important exports is the orchid.

3. Rose

Like people in other countries, Thai people give roses to their lovers on Valentine's day.

4. Butterfly pea

The butterfly pea is native to Asia.

5. Monkey pod

Monkey pods are the symbol of Chulalongkorn University, the most respected university in Thailand.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Thai Vocabulary S1 #13 Geographical Features

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Cultural Insight

13

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ภูมิศาสตร์ 5 แห่ง ที่มีชื่อเสียงของประเทศไทย ได้แก่ที่ไหนบ้าง?

2. 1. ดอยอินทนนท์

3. 2. แม่น้ำเจ้าพระยา

4. 3. แม่น้ำโขง

5. 4. หมู่เกาะพีพี

6. 5. อ่าวไทย

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most famous geographical features in Thailand?

2. 1. Mount Intanon

3. 2. Chao Phraya River

4. 3. Khong River

5. 4. Phi Phi Islands

6. 5. Gulf of Thailand

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five most famous geographical features in Thailand?
2. 1. daawy-in-thá-non
3. 2. mâae-náam jâo-phrá-yaa
4. 3. mâae-náam khŏong
5. 4. mùu-gàw-phii-phii
6. 5. àao-thai

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English
ดอยอินทนนท์	*daawy-in-thá-non*	Mount Intanon
แม่น้ำเจ้าพระยา	*mâae-náam jâo-phrá-yaa*	Chao Phraya River
แม่น้ำโขง	*mâae-náam khŏong*	Khong River
หมู่เกาะพีพี	*mùu-gàw-phii-phii*	Phi Phi Islands
อ่าวไทย	*àao-thai*	Gulf of Thailand

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ดอยอินทนนท์คือภูเขาที่สูงที่สุดในประเทศไทย *daawy-in-thá-non khuue phuu-khăo thîi sŭung thîi-sùt nai bprà-thêet-thai* "Mount Inthanon is the highest mountain in Thailand."	แม่น้ำเจ้าพระยาคือแม่น้ำสายหลักของประเทศไทย *mâae-náam jâo-phrá-yaa khuue mâae-náam săai làk khăawng bprà-thêet-thai* "The Chao Phraya is a major river in Thailand."
แม่น้ำโขงไหลผ่านแปดจังหวัดของประเทศไทย *mâae-náam khŏong lăi-phàan bpàaet-jang-wàt khăawng bprà-thêet-thâi* "The Khong river runs through 8 provinces of Thailand."	หมู่เกาะพีพีตั้งอยู่ในจังหวัดกระบี่ *mùu-gàw-phii-phii dtâng-yùu nai jang-wàt grà-bìi* "The Phi Phi islands are located in Krabi province."

อ่าวไทยล้อมรอบด้วยประเทศไทย ประเทศกัมพูชา และประเทศเวียดนาม
àao-thai láawm-râawp dûuai bprà-thêet-thai bprà-thêet-gam-phuu-chaa láe bprà-thêet-wîiat-naam

"The Gulf of Thailand is surrounded by Thailand, Cambodia and Vietnam."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Doi Intanon

In the winter, Mount Intanon is always full of tourists who come for traveling and camping.

2. Chao Phraya River

The Chao Phraya River flows through ten provinces of Thailand.

3. Khong River

The Khong River is also a border between Thailand and Laos.

4. Phi Phi Islands

The Phi Phi islands are well known for their beautiful beaches and clear water.

5. Gulf of Thailand

Diving is a popular activity for tourists who visit the Gulf of Thailand.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Thai Vocabulary S1 #14 Cities

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Cultural Insight

14

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. เมือง 5 แห่ง ที่มีชื่อเสียงของประเทศไทย ได้แก่ที่ไหนบ้าง?

2. 1. กรุงเทพมหานคร

3. 2. เชียงใหม่

4. 3. อุบลราชธานี

5. 4. พัทยา

6. 5. ภูเก็ต

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular cities in Thailand?

2. 1. Bangkok

3. 2. Chiang Mai

4. 3. Ubon Ratchathani

5. 4. Pattaya

6. 5. Phuket

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five most popular cities in Thailand?

2. 1. grung-thêep-má-hăa-ná-khaawn

3. 2. chiiang-mài

4. 3. ù-bon-râat-chá-thaa-nii

5. 4. phát-thá-yaa

6. 5. phuu-gèt

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English
กรุงเทพมหานคร	*grung-thêep-má-hăa-ná-khaawn*	Bangkok
เชียงใหม่	*chiiang-mài*	Chiang Mai
อุบลราชธานี	*ù-bon-râat-chá-thaa-nii*	Ubon Ratchathani
พัทยา	*phát-thá-yaa*	Pattaya
ภูเก็ต	*phuu-gèt*	Phuket

SAMPLE SENTENCES

กรุงเทพมหานครเป็นเมืองที่มีสีสัน *grung-thêep-má-hăa-ná-khaawn bpen muueang thîi mii sìi-săn* "Bangkok is a colorful city."	เมื่อไหร่ที่คุณมีโอกาสไปเชียงใหม่ อย่าลืมแวะวัดพระธาตุดอยสุเทพ *mûuea-rài thîi khun mii oo-gàat bpai chiiang-mài yàa-luuem wáe wát-phrá-thâat-daawy-sù-thêep* "When you have a chance to go to Chiang Mai, don't forget to visit Phra That Doi Suthep Temple."
อุบลราชธานีคือจังหวัดที่ใหญ่เป็นอันดับที่ห้าของประเทศไทย *ù-bon-râat-chá-thaa-nii khuue jang-wàt-thîi-yài bpen an-dàp thîi-hâa khăawng bprà-thêet thai* "Ubon Ratchathani is the fifth largest province in Thailand."	พัทยามีชื่อเสียงในเรื่องของสถานบันเทิงยามคำคืน *phát-thá-yaa mii chûue-sĭiang nai rûueang khăawng sà-thăan-ban-thooeng yaam khâm-khuuen* "Pattaya is famous for its nightlife."

ภูเก็ตคือเกาะที่ใหญ่ที่สุดของประเทศไทย
phuu-gèt khuue gàw thîi yài thîi-sùt khăawng bprà-thêet-thai

"Phuket is the largest island of Thailand."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Bangkok

Bangkok is the capital of Thailand.

2. Chiang Mai

There are more than three hundred Buddhist temples located in Chiang Mai.

3. Ubon

Ratchathani

Ubon Ratchathani is known for its annual Candle Festival.

4. Pattaya

More than three hundred movies have been filmed in Pattaya.

5. Phuket

Patong Beach is one of the most popular tourist areas of Phuket.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Thai Vocabulary S1 #15 Sports

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Cultural Insight

15

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. กีฬา 5 ชนิด ที่เป็นที่นิยมของประเทศไทย ได้แก่อะไรบ้าง?

2. 1. ฟุตบอล

3. 2. มวยไทย

4. 3. ตะกร้อ

5. 4. เทนนิส

6. 5. การแข่งขันเรือหางยาว

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular sports in Thailand?

2. 1. Soccer

3. 2. Thai boxing

4. 3. Takraw

5. 4. Tennis

6. 5. Long-tail boat racing

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five most popular sports in Thailand?

2. 1. fút-bawn

3. 2. muuai-thai

4. 3. dtà-grâaw

5. 4. then-nít

6. 5. khàeng-khăn ruuea hăang-yaao

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
การแข่งขันเรือหางยาว	*khàeng-khăn ruuea hăang-yaao*	long-tail boat racing	
ฟุตบอล	*fút-baawn*	soccer	Noun
มวยไทย	*muuai-thai*	Thai boxing	
ตะกร้อ	*dtà-grâaw*	takraw	
เทนนิส	*then-nís*	tennis	Noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

เทศกาลการแข่งขันเรืองหางยาวของจังหวัดพิจิตรมีชื่อเสียงมาก

thêet-sà-gaan khàeng-khăn ruuea hăang-yaao khăawng jang-wàt phí-jìt mii chûue-sĭiang mâak

"The Long-tail boat racing festival in Pichit province is very well-known."

ทีมฟุตบอลชาติไทยยังไม่เคยไปบอลโลก

thiim fút-bawn thai yang mâi khooei bpai bawn-lôok

"Thailand's national soccer team has not been to the World Cup yet."

นักกีฬากำลังเล่นฟุตบอล

nák-gii-laa gam-lang lên fút-baawn

"The players are playing soccer."

มีการแข่งขันมวยไทยทุกวันจันทร์ พุธ พฤหัสบดี และอาทิตย์ที่สนามมวยราชดำเนิน

mii gaan khàeng-khăn muuai-thai thúk wan-jan phút phá-rúe-hàt-sà-baaw-dii láe aa-thít thîi sà-năam-muuai râat-chá-dam-nooen

"There are Thai boxing contests every Monday, Wednesday, Thursday, and Sunday at the Rajadamnern Boxing Stadium."

ทีมตะกร้อแต่ละทีมนั้นมีผู้เล่นเพียง 3 คนเท่านั้น

thiim dtà-grâaw dtàae-lá-thiim nán mii phûu-lên phiiang săam khon thâo nán

"Each Takraw team consists of only 3 players."

เทนนิสเคยเป็นกีฬาสำหรับชนชั้นสูงในประเทศไทย

then-nít khooei bpen gii-laa săm-ràp chon-chán-sŭung nai bprà-thêet-thai

"Tennis used to be a sport for upper class people in Thailand."

ชายหนุ่มกำลังเล่นเทนนิส

chaai-nùm gam-lang lên then-nís

"The young men are playing tennis."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Soccer

Soccer is the most popular sport in Thailand.

2. Thai Boxing

The Rajadamnern Boxing Stadium is one of the two main stadiums for modern Thai boxing.

3. Takraw

Takraw is a popular sport in Thailand that involves hitting a rattan ball over a net without using the hands.

4. Tennis

Paradorn Srichaphan is the most famous tennis player in Thailand.

5. Long-tail boat racing

Long-tail boat racing is held on the Nan River.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Thai Vocabulary S1 #16 Recreational Activities

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Cultural Insight

16

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. กิจกรรม 5 อย่าง ที่เป็นที่นิยมของประเทศไทย ได้แก่อะไรบ้าง?

2. 1. ดูหนัง

3. 2. เที่ยวกลางคืน

4. 3. ซื้อของ

5. 4. เล่นกีฬา

6. 5. ฟังเพลง

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular recreational activities in Thailand?

2. 1. Watching movies

3. 2. Enjoying the nightlife

4. 3. Going shopping

5. 4. Playing sports

6. 5. Listening to music

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five most popular recreational activities in Thailand?

2. 1. duu-năng

3. 2. thîiao-glaang-khuuen

4. 3. súue khăawng

5. 4. lên gii-laa

6. 5. fang-phleeng

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English
ดูหนัง	*duu-năng*	watching movies
เที่ยวกลางคืน	*thîiao-glaang-khuuen*	enjoying the nightlife
ซื้อของ	*súue khăawng*	going shopping
เล่นกีฬา	*lên gii-laa*	playing sports
ฟังเพลง	*fang-phleeng*	listening to music

SAMPLE SENTENCES

สยามภาวลัยเป็นที่ที่ยอดเยี่ยมสำหรับดูหนังในกรุงเทพฯ เพราะมีที่นั่งที่กว้างและจอหนังที่ใหญ่ *sà-yăam phaa-wá-lai bpen thîi thîi yâawt-yîiam săm-ràp gaan duu-năng nai grung-thêep phráw mii thîi-nâng thîi gwâang láe jaaw năng thîi yài* "The Siam Pavalai Royal Grand is a great place to watch movies in Bangkok because they have roomy seats and the screen is very large."	มีแหล่งเที่ยวกลางคืนและคลับที่ทันสมัยมากมายในซอยทองหล่อที่กรุงเทพ *mii làeng thîiao glaang-khuuen láe khlàp thîi than-săi-măi mâak-maai nai saawy thaawng-làaw grung-thêep* "There are a lot of modern and cool nightclubs and pubs along Soi Thonglor in Bangkok."
คนกรุงเทพฯที่มีอันจะกินชอบซื้อของที่สยามพารากอนมากเพราะมันใหญ่โตและหรูหรา *khon grung-thêep thîi mii an-jà-gin châawp súue khăawng thîi sà-yăam-phaa-raa-gâwn mâak phráw man yài-dtoo láe rŭu-răa* "Rich people in Bangkok love going shopping at Siam Paragon because it is big and luxurious."	ผู้ชายไทยชอบเล่นกีฬาโดยเฉพาะอย่างยิ่งกีฬาฟุตบอล *phûu-chaai-thai châawp lên gii-laa dooi chà-pháw yàang-yîng gii-laa fút-bawn* "Thai men love to play sports, especially soccer."

ผู้คนจำนวนมากชอบฟังเพลงหลังเลิกงานที่ผับหรือไนท์คลับในซอยทองหล่อ
phûu-khon jam-nuuan mâak châawp fang-phleeng lăng lôoek ngaan thîi phàp rŭue nái-khlàp nai saawy thaawng-làaw

"A lot of people love to listen to music after work at pubs or nightclubs in Soi Thonglor."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Watching movies

The Siam Pavalai Royal Grand Theatre is the largest theatre in Thailand with 1200 seats.

2. Enjoying the nightlife

Thonglor's street is one of the most popular spots to enjoy nightlife in Bangkok.

3. Going shopping

Siam Paragon is one of the top two shopping malls in Thailand and one of the biggest places to go shopping in Asia.

4. Playing sports

Thai men are usually big fans of the Premier League Teams and love to play sports as well as watch them.

5. Listening to music

There are many radio stations to listen to music in Thailand, some of which are in English.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Thai Vocabulary S1 #17 Tourist Attractions

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Cultural Insight

17

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. จุดดึงดูดนักท่องเที่ยง 5 แห่ง ที่มีชื่อเสียงของประเทศไทย ได้แก่ที่ไหนบ้าง?

2. 1. วัดพระธาตุดอยสุเทพ

3. 2. พระบรมมหาราชวัง

4. 3. หัวหิน

5. 4. เกาะสมุย

6. 5. เกาะตะปู

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular tourist attractions in Thailand?

2. 1. Phrathat Doi Suthep Temple

3. 2. The Grand Palace

4. 3. Hua-Hin

5. 4. Samui Island

6. 5. Tapu Island

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five most popular tourist attractions in Thailand?
2. 1. wát phrá-thâat-dooi-sù-thêep
3. 2. phrá-baaw-rom-má-hăa-râat-chá-wan
4. 3. hŭua-hĭn
5. 4. gàw-sà-mŭi
6. 5. gàw dtà-bpuu

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
หัวหิน	*hŭua-hĭn*	Hua-Hin	
เกาะสมุย	*gàw-sà-mŭi*	Samui Island	
เกาะตะปู	*gàw dtà-bpuu*	Tapu Island	
วัดพระธาตุดอยสุเทพ	*wát phrá-thâat-dooi-sù-thêep*	Phrathat Doi Suthep Temple	
พระบรมมหาราชวัง	*phrá-baaw-rom-má-hăa-râat-chá-wang*	The Grand Palace	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ตัวเมืองหัวหินอยู่ห่างจากกรุงเทพฯประมาณ 195 กิโลเมตร *dtuua-muueang hŭua-hĭn yùu-hàang-jàak grung-thêep bprà-maan nùeng-ráawy-gâao-sìp-hâa-gì-loo-méet* "The city of Hua-Hin is about 195 kilometers from Bangkok."	มีชายหาดมากมายในเกาะสมุย แต่หาดเฉวงเป็นชายหาดที่มีชื่อเสียงมากที่สุด *mii chaai-hàat mâak-maai nai gàw-sà-mŭi dtàae hàat-chà-wĕeng bpen chaai-hàat thîi mii chûue-sĭiang mâak thîi-sùt* "There are many beaches on Samui Island but Chaweng beach is the most well-known one."
เกาะเจมส์บอนคืออีกชื่อหนึ่งของเกาะตะปู *gàw-jeem-baawn khuue ìik chûue nùeng khăawng gàw dtà-bpuu* "James Bond Island is another name for Tapu island."	เจดีย์ที่ตั้งอยู่ที่วัดพระธาตุดอยสุเทพนั้นมีสีทองและสวยงามมาก *jee-dii thîi dtâng yùu thîi wát phrá-thâat-dooi-sù-thêep nán mii sĭi-thaawng láe sŭuai-ngaam mâak* "The pagoda situated at Phrathat Doi Suthep Temple is gold in color and very beautiful."
พระบรมมหาราชวังเคยเป็นที่ประทับของรัชกาลที่หนึ่งถึงรัชกาลที่ห้า *phrá-baaw-rom-má-hăa-râat-chá-wang khooei bpen thîi bprà tháp khăawn rát-chá-gaan thîi nùeng thúeng rát-chá-gaan thîi hâa* "The grand palace was the residence of King Rama I to King Rama V."	ผมไม่เคยไปพระบรมมหาราชวังมาก่อน *phŏm mâi khooei bpai phrá-baaw-rom-má-hăa-râat-chá-wang maa gàawn* "I have never been to the Grand Palace before."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Phrathat Doi Suthep Temple

Visitors have to climb 309 steps to see the pagodas in Phrathat Doi Suthep Temple.

2. The Grand Palace

The Grand Palace is the most popular tourist attraction in Thailand.

3. Hua-Hin

People from Bangkok love to travel to Hua-Hin over the weekend or when they have a short vacation because it is not very far from Bangkok.

4. Samui Island

Chaweng Beach is the longest beach on Samui Island and considered by many to be the most beautiful beach there.

5. Tapu Island

The James Bond movie *The Man with the Golden Gun* was filmed at Tapu island in 1974.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Thai Vocabulary S1 #18 Inside a Thai Home

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Cultural Insight

18

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ของใช้ในบ้าน 5 อย่าง ที่เป็นที่รู้จักของประเทศไทย ได้แก่อะไรบ้าง?
2. 1. บ้านทรงไทย
3. 2. ยากันยุง
4. 3. ร่ม
5. 4. ตู้เย็น
6. 5. รองเท้าแตะฟองน้ำ

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular common things of the homes in Thailand?
2. 1. Thai style house
3. 2. Mosquito repellent
4. 3. Umbrella
5. 4. Refrigerator
6. 5. Rubber sandals

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five most popular common things of the homes in Thailand?
2. 1. bâan song thai
3. 2. yaa-gan-yung
4. 3. rôm
5. 4. dtûu-yen
6. 5. raawng-tháo-dtàe-faawng-náam

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
รองเท้าแตะฟองน้ำ	*raawng-tháo-dtàe-faawng-náam*	Rubber sandals	
บ้านทรงไทย	*bâan song thai*	Thai style house	
ยากันยุง	*yaa-gan-yung*	mosquito repellent	
ร่ม	*rôm*	umbrella	Noun
ตู้เย็น	*dtûu-yen*	refrigerator	Noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

คนไทยชอบสวมใส่รองเท้าแตะฟองน้ำเพราะใส่ง่ายและราคาถูก *khon thai châawp sŭuam-sài raawng-tháo-dtàe-faawng-náam phráw sài ngâai láe raa-khaa-thùuk* "Thai people love rubber sandals because they are easy to wear and very cheap."	สมัยนี้ไม่ค่อยมีบ้านทรงไทยให้เห็น *săi-maĭ níi mâi khâawy mii bâan song thai hâi hĕn* "Nowadays, Thai style houses are not easy to find."
ยากันยุงขายดีในหน้าฝน *yaa-gan-yung khaai dii nai nâa-fon* "Mosquito repellent sells very well during the rainy season."	วันนี้อย่าลืมเอาร่มออกไปด้วยนะคะเพราะข้างนอกอากาศร้อนมาก *wan-níi yàa-luuem ao-rôm àawk-bpai-dûuai ná-khá phráw khâang-nâawk aa-gàat ráawn mâak* "Don't forget to bring an umbrella with you today because it is very hot outside."
ตู้เย็นแบบมีเครื่องทำน้ำแข็งอัตโนมัติกำลังเป็นที่นิยมในเมืองไทย *dtûu-yen bpàaep mii khrûueang tham náam-khăeng àt-dtà-noo-mát gam-lang bpen thîi ní-yom nai muueang thai* "A refrigerator with an automatic ice maker is becoming popular in Thailand."	ผู้หญิงหิว ผู้ชายที่หิวกำลังมองหาอาหารในตู้เย็น *phûu-yĭng hĭu. phûu-chaai thîi hĭu gam-lang maawng-hăa aa-hăan nai dtûu-yen.* "The woman is hungry. The hungry man is looking for food in the refrigerator."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Thai style house

Thai style houses are always built from teak wood.

2. Mosquito repellent

In Thailand, mosquito repellent is a necessity during the rainy season.

3. Umbrella

Thais use umbrellas on sunny days to protect themselves from the hot sun.

4. Refrigerator

Many manufacturers, especially Japanese companies, sell refrigerators in Thailand.

5. Rubber Sandals

You can easily buy the rubber sandals at the convenience store in Thailand.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Thai Vocabulary S1 #19 Medicines

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Cultural Insight

19

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ยา 5 ชนิด ที่เป็นที่รู้จักของประเทศไทย ได้แก่อะไรบ้าง?

2. 1. ยาหม่องตราเสือ

3. 2. ยาดม

4. 3. ไทลีนอล

5. 4. แอร์ - เอ็กซ์

6. 5. ยาแดง

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most commonly used medicine and drugs in Thailand?

2. 1. Tiger Balm

3. 2. Inhalant

4. 3. Tylenol

5. 4. Air-X

6. 5. Mercurochrome

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five most popular commonly used medicine and drugs in Thailand?
2. 1. yaa-màwng dtraa sŭuea
3. 2. yaa dom
4. 3. thai-lii-nâwn
5. 4. aae - ék
6. 5. yaa daaeng

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English
ยาหม่องตราเสือ	*yaa-màwng dtraa sŭuea*	Tiger Balm
ยาดม	*yaa dom*	Inhaler
ไทลีนอล	*thai-lii-nâwn*	Tylenol
แอร์ - เอ็กซ์	*aae - ék*	Air-X
ยาแดง	*yaa daaeng*	Mercurochrome

SAMPLE SENTENCES

คนไทยมักจะใช้ยาหม่องตราเสือเมื่อโดนแมลงกัดต่อย *khon thai mák jà chái yaa-màwng dtraa sŭuea mûuea doon má-laaeng gàt dtàwy* "Thai people always use Tiger Balm for insect bites."	ดมยาดมเวลาที่คุณรู้สึกวิงเวียน *dom yaa dom wee-laa thîi khun rúu-sùek wing-wiian* "Use an inhaler whenever you feel dizzy."
คนไทยไว้วางใจไทลีนอลเพราะเป็นยี่ห้อที่มาจากประเทศสหรัฐอเมริกา *khon-thai wái-waang-jai thai-lii-nâwn phráw bpen yîi-hâaw thîi maa jàak bprà-thêet-sà-hà-rát-à-mee-rí-gaa* "Thai people trust Tylenol because it is a popular brand from the United States."	รับประทานแอร์-เอ็กซ์ 1 เม็ดหลังอาหารเวลาที่คุณมีอาการท้องอืดท้องเฟ้อ *ráp bprá-thaan aae-ék nùeng-mét wee-laa thîi khun mii aa-gaan tháawng-ùuet tháawng-fóoe* "Take a tablet of Air-X after a meal when you have gas."

ยาแดงมีสีแดงเข้ม
yaa-daaeng mii sĭi daaeng khêm

"Mercurochrome is dark red in color."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Tiger Balm

Tiger balm is a topical treatment that warms the skin to relieve various ailments, including muscle aches.

2. Inhalant

Thai-style inhalers are made of menthol and eucalyptus.

3. Tylenol

Tylenol is a common pain reliever used in Thailand.

4. Air-X

Air-X is a medicine that helps fight gas.

5. Mercurochrome

Mercurochrome is a topical antiseptic used often in Thailand to treat cuts or scrapes.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Thai Vocabulary S1 #20 Transportation

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Cultural Insight

20

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. การคมนาคม 5 แบบ ที่เป็นที่นิยมของประเทศไทย ได้แก่อะไรบ้าง?

2. 1. รถประจำทาง

3. 2. รถแท็กซี่

4. 3. รถไฟฟ้า

5. 4. รถไฟใต้ดิน

6. 5. รถมอเตอร์ไซค์รับจ้าง

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most frequently used modes of transportation in Thailand?

2. 1. Bus

3. 2. Taxi

4. 3. Sky train

5. 4. Underground train

6. 5. Motorbike taxi

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five most popular frequently used modes of transportation in Thailand?
2. 1. rót bprà-jam-thaang
3. 2. rót tháek-sîi
4. 3. rót-fai-fáa
5. 4. rót-fai-dtâi-din
6. 5. rót-maaw-dtuuhr-sai-ráp-jâang

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
รถไฟฟ้า	*rót-fai-fáa*	sky train	
รถไฟใต้ดิน	*rót-fai-dtâi-din*	underground train	
รถมอเตอร์ไซค์รับจ้าง	*rót-maaw-dtuuhr-sai-ráp-jâang*	motorbike taxi	
รถประจำทาง	*rót bprà-jam-thaang*	bus	
รถแท็กซี่	*rót-tháek-sîi*	taxi	Noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

รถไฟฟ้าได้เปิดให้บริการครั้งแรกในวันที่ 5 ธันวาคม 2542 *rót-fai-fáa dâi bpòet baaw-rì-gaan khráng râaek nai wan-tîi hâa than-waa-khohm săawng-phan-hâa-ráawy-sìi-sìp–săawng* "The sky train in Thailand started operating on December 5, 1999."	ประเทศไทยมีรถไฟใต้ดินสายแรกในปี 2547 *bprà-thêet thai mii rót-fai-dtâi-din săai râaek nai bpi săawng-phan-hâa-ráawy-sìi-sìp–jèt* "Thailand got its first underground train line in 2004."
รถมอเตอร์ไซค์รับจ้างเป็นทางเลือกที่ดีที่สุดในยามที่การจราจรติดขัด *rót-maaw-dtuuhr-sai-ráp-jâang bpen thaang lûueak tîi dii tîi sùt nai yaam tîi gaan ja-ra-jaawn dtìt-khàt* "A motorbike taxi is the best choice when traffic is congested."	คนไทยชอบเดินทางโดยรถประทางแบบมีแอร์มากกว่า *khon-thai châawp dooen thaang dooi rót-bprà-jam-thaang bàaep-mii-aae mâak gwàa* "Thai people prefer to travel in air-conditioned buses."
รถแท็กซี่ในประเทศไทยมีหลากสีแต่สีเขียวเหลืองคือสีที่พบเจอบ่อยที่สุด *rót tháek-sîi nai bprà-thêet-thai mii làak sĭi dtàae sĭi khĭao lŭueang khuue sĭi tîi phób jooe bàwy tîi sùt* "Taxis in Thailand are colorful, but the green-yellow ones are the most common."	ผู้หญิงกำลังเข้าไปในรถแท็กซี่ "The woman is getting in a taxi."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Bus

The standard bus ticket in Thailand starts at just 7 Baht (0.2 USD)

2.

Taxi

No matter what color the taxi is, the fare is the same.

3. Sky Train

The Sky Train is an elevated rail system that runs through the main shopping and business areas of Bangkok.

4. Underground Train

The blue line of the underground train is twenty-one kilometers long and runs from Bang Sue to Hua Lamphong.

5. Motorbike taxi

Motorbike taxis are always used for short trips in Thailand.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Thai Vocabulary S1 #21 Shops and Services

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Cultural Insight

21

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ร้านค้าและบริการ 5 แบบ ที่เป็นที่นิยมของประเทศไทย ได้แก่อะไรบ้าง?
2. 1. ร้านซักอบรีด
3. 2. ร้านเสริมสวย
4. 3. ศูนย์ถ่ายเอกสาร
5. 4. ร้านถ่ายรูป
6. 5. ร้านนวดแผนไทย

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular shops and services in Thailand?
2. 1. Laundromat
3. 2. Salon
4. 3. Copy center
5. 4. Photography shop
6. 5. Thai massage shop

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five most popular shops and services in Thailand?

2. 1. ráan sák-òp-rêet

3. 2. ráan sěerm-sŭay

4. 3. sŭun thàai aèhk-gà–săan

5. 4. ráan thàai-rûup

6. 5. ráan nûuat-phăaen-thai

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English
ร้านซักอบรีด	*ráan sák-òp-rêet*	Laundromat
ร้านเสริมสวย	*ráan sěerm-sŭay*	salon
ศูนย์ถ่ายเอกสาร	*sŭun thàai aèhk-gà–săan*	copy center
ร้านถ่ายรูป	*ráan thàai-rûup*	photography shop
ร้านนวดแผนไทย	*ráan nûuat-phăaen-thai*	Thai massage shop

SAMPLE SENTENCES

จะมีร้านซักอบรีดเปิดขึ้นอีกมากในเมืองใหญ่ๆอย่างกรุงเทพฯและเชียงใหม่ *jà mii ráan sák-òp-rêet bpòet khûen ìik mâak nai muueang yài yài yàng grung-thêep láe chiiang-mài* "More laundromats are opening in big cities like Bangkok and Chiang Mai."	บริการสระไดร์ที่ร้านเสริมสวยในห้างแพงมาก *baaw-rì-gaan sà dai tîi ráan sěerm-sŭay nai hâang phaaeng mâak* "The shampoo and blow dry service at salons inside shopping malls is very expensive."
มีศูนย์ถ่ายเอกสารมากมายรอบๆมหาวิทยาลัย *sŭun thàai aèhk-gà–săan mâak-maai râawp râawp má-hăa-wít-thá-yaa-lai* "There are many copy centers around the universities."	โดยทั่วไปแล้วการถ่ายรูปพาสปอร์ตจะให้ช่างกล้องมืออาชีพที่ร้านถ่ายรูปเป็นคนถ่าย *dooi thûua-bpai láaeo gaan-thàai-rûup phàat-sà-bpàawt jà hâi châang glâwng muue-aa-chîip tîi ráan thàai-rûup bpen khon thàai.* "It is common to have passport photos taken by professional photographers at photography shops."

โดยทั่วไปแล้วร้านนวดแผนไทยจะให้บริการทั้งการนวดตัวและนวดเท้า
dooi-thûua-bpai láaeo ráan nûuat-phăaen-thai jà hâi baaw-rì-gaan tháng gaan nûuat dtuua láe nûuat tháao

"Usually, a Thai massage shop will offer both body massage and foot massage services."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Laundromat

Some laundromats in Thailand have a delivery service to support customer demand.

2. Salon

The prices at salons in shopping malls are two to three times more expensive than those at street salons.

3. Copy center

In Thailand it is not common to own copy machines, so there are copy centers where documents can be copied.

4. Photography shop

Thai people will take their important photos, for example, family photos or graduation photos, at the photography shop because it provides better quality.

5. Thai massage shop

One of the most well-known schools for workers at Thai massage shops is Pho Temple.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Thai Vocabulary S1 #22 Chain Stores

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Cultural Insight

22

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ศูนย์การค้า 5 แห่ง ที่เป็นที่รู้จักของประเทศไทย ได้แก่อะไรบ้าง?

2. 1. เดอะมอลล์

3. 2. เซ็นทรัล

4. 3. เซเว่น อีเลฟเว่น

5. 4. เทสโก้โลตัส

6. 5. บิ๊กซี

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular chain stores in Thailand?

2. 1. The Mall

3. 2. Central

4. 3. 7-Eleven

5. 4. Tesco Lotus

6. 5. Big-C

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five most popular chain stores in Thailand?

2. 1. tdòe maaw

3. 2. sen thâl

4. 3. se-wên eìi-laae-wên

5. 4. thés-gô-loo-dhát

6. 5. híg-sii

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English
เดอะมอลล์	*tdòe maaw*	The Mall
เซ็นทรัล	*sen thâl*	Central
เซเว่น อีเลฟเว่น	*se-wên eìi-laae-wên*	7-Eleven
เทสโก้โลตัส	*thés-gô-loo-dhát*	Tesco Lotus
บิ๊กซี	*híg-sii*	Big-C

SAMPLE SENTENCES

เดอะมอลล์มีหลายสาขาทั่วประเทศ *tdòe maaw mii lăai săa-khăa tûa bprà-thêet* "There are many branches of The Mall across the country."	สาขาที่ใหญ่ที่สุดของเซ็นทรัลอยู่ที่สี่แยกราชประสงค์ *săa-khăa tîi yài thîi sùt khăawng sen thâl yùu tîi sìi yâaek râat-chá-bpàa-sŏng* "The largest branch of Central is at the Ratchaprasong Intersection."
ประเทศไทยมีจำนวนร้านเซเว่นอีเลฟเว่นมากเป็นอันดับที่สามรองจากสหรัฐอเมริกาและญี่ปุ่น *bprà-thêet thai mii jam-nuuan ráan se-wên eìi-laae-wên mâak bpen an-dàp-thîi săam raawng jàak sà-hà-rát-à-mee-rí-gaa láe yîi bpùn* "Thailand has the third largest number of 7-Eleven stores after the US and Japan."	เทสโก้โลตัสเป็นผู้นำตลาดในกลุ่มร้านดิสเคาน์สโตร์ในเมืองไทย *thés-gô-loo-dhát bpen phûu-nam dtà-làat nai glùm ráan dis-kháo sà-dtoo nai muueang thai* "Tesco Lotus is the market leader of discount stores in Thailand."

บิ๊กซีมีโปรโมชั่นแรงๆอยู่เสมอ

híg-sii mii bpoo-moo-chân raaeng raaeng yùu sà-mŏohr

"Big-C always offers great promotions."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. The Mall

The Mall, which has been around for more than thirty years, is a well-known department store in Thailand.

2. Central

Central is a well-known department store in Thailand that was established in 1947.

3. 7-Eleven

Today there are about 6,300 7-Eleven branches all over Thailand.

4. Tesco Lotus

Tesco Lotus is a common discount store in Thailand.

5. Big-C

Big-C supermarket is a hypermarket in Thailand that targets middle class customers.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Thai Vocabulary S1 #23 Traditional Clothing

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Cultural Insight

23

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. เครื่องนุ่งห่มพื้นเมือง 5 ชนิด ที่เป็นที่รู้จักของประเทศไทย ได้แก่อะไรบ้าง?

2. 1. ชุดม่อห้อม

3. 2. เสื้อคอกระเช้า

4. 3. ชุดไทยบรมพิมาน

5. 4. โสร่ง

6. 5. ผ้าถุง

ENGLISH

1. What are the five most popular items of traditional clothing in Thailand?

2. 1. Morhom clothes

3. 2. Round-necked sleeveless collar

4. 3. Borom Pi Man Thai dress

5. 4. Sarong

6. 5. Tube skirt

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. What are the five most popular traditional clothing in Thailand?
2. 1. chút mâaw hâawm
3. 2. sûuea khaaw grà-cháow
4. 3. chút thai baaw-rohm-pi-maan
5. 4. sà-ròhng
6. 5. phâa-thŭng

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English
ชุดม่อห้อม	*chút mâaw hâawm*	Morhom clothes
เสื้อคอกระเช้า	*sûuea khaaw grà-cháow*	round-necked sleeveless collar
ชุดไทยบรมพิมาน	*chút thai baaw-rohm-pi-maan*	Borom Pi Man Thai dress
โสร่ง	*sà-ròhng*	Sarong
ผ้าถุง	*phâa-thŭng*	tube skirt

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ผู้คนทางภาคเหนือของประเทศไทยมักจะสวมชุดม่อห้อมในช่วงเทศกาลสงกรานต์ *phûu-khon thaang phâak-nŭuea khăawng bprà-thêet-thai mák jà sŭam chút mâaw hâawm nai chûuang thêet-sà-gaan sŏhng graan* "People in the Northern region of Thailand usually wear Morhom clothes during the Songkran festival."	สมัยนี้มีเพียงคนแก่เท่านั้นที่ใส่เสื้อคอกระเช้า *săi maĭ née mii phiiang khohn gàae thâo-nán tîi sài sûuea khaaw grà-cháow* "These days, round-necked sleeveless collars are only worn by elderly women."
ผู้หญิงจำนวนมากใส่ชุดไทยบรมพิมานในงานแต่งงานแบบไทย *phûu-yĭng jam-nuuan mâak sai chút thai baaw-rohm-pi-maan nai ngaan dtàeng-ngaan bàaeb thai* "A lot of women wear a Borom Pi Man Thai dress at their Thai-style wedding ceremony."	ผู้ชายทางภาคใต้ของไทยสวมโสร่ง *phûu-chaai thaang phâak-dtâi khăawng thai sŭuam sà-ròhng* "Men in the southern part of Thailand wear Sarongs."

ผ้าถุงที่ทำจากผ้าไหมแพงกว่าผ้าถุงที่ทำจากผ้าฝ้ายมาก

phâa-thŭng tîi tham jàak phâa-măi phaaeng gwàa phâa-thŭng tîi tham jàak phâa-fâai mâak

"Tube skirts made of silk are far more expensive than those made of cotton."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Morhom clothes

The main characteristic of Morhom clothes is the use of a Northern-style blue cloth.

2. Round-necked sleeveless collar

Elderly women in Thailand love to wear round-neck sleeveless collars because they are comfortable.

3. Borom Pi Man Thai dress

Borom Pi Man Thai dresses are always made from Thai silk.

4. Sarong

A sarong is a large piece of fabric often wrapped around the waist; it is worn in many countries around the world, including Thailand.

5. Tube skirt

Thai people often wear tube skirt on special occassions.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Thai Vocabulary S1 #24 Artists and Musicians

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Cultural Insight

24

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. ศิลปินและนักร้อง 5 ท่าน ที่มีชื่อเสียงของประเทศไทย ได้แก่ใครบ้าง?

2. 1. ธงไชย แมคอินไตย์

3. 2. บอดี้แสลม

4. 3. ปาล์มมี่

5. 4. บอยด์ โกสิยพงษ์

6. 5. พาราดอกซ์

ENGLISH

1. Who are the five most popular artists or musicians in Thailand?

2. 1. Thongchai McIntyre

3. 2. Bodyslam

4. 3. Palmy

5. 4. Boyd Kosiyabong

6. 5. Paradox

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. Who are the five most popular artists or musicians in Thailand?
2. 1. thoong-chai máaeg-in-dtai
3. 2. baaw-dii-sà-laaem
4. 3. bpaam-mii
5. 4. baawy goo-sì-yá-phoong
6. 5. phaa-raa-dàwg

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English
ธงไชย แมคอินไตย์	*thoong-chai máaeg-in-dtai*	Thongchai McIntyre, a male singer
บอดี้แสลม	*baaw-dii-sà-laaem*	Bodyslam, a Thai rock band (changed)
ปาล์มมี่	*bpaam-mii*	Palmy, a female singer
บอยด์ โกสิยพงษ์	*baawy goo-sì-yá-phoong*	Boyd Kosiyabong, a singer, songwriter, and music producer
พาราดอกซ์	*phaa-raa-dàwg*	Paradox, an alternative rock band

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ธงไชยแมคอินไตย์คือนักร้องชายที่มีชื่อเสียงมากที่สุดในประเทศไทย *thoong-chai máaeg-in-dtai khuue nák-ráawng tîi mii chûue-sĭiang mâak thîi-sùt nai bprà-thêet-thai* "Thongchai McIntyre is the most famous male singer from Thailand."	จนถึงตอนนี้บอดี้แสลมได้มีผลงานออกมา 6 อัลบัม *jon-thueng dtaawn-nii baaw-dii-sà-laaem dâi mii phohn-ngaan àawk maa hòk aàl-bâm* "Bodyslam has released at least 6 albums so far."
อัลบัมแรกของปาล์มมี่ออกเมื่อเดือนธันวาคม 2544 *aàl-bâm râaek khăawng bpaam-mii àawk mûuea duuean than-waa-khohm săawng-phan-hâa-ráawy-sìi-sìp–sìi* "Palmy's first album was released in December 2001."	บอยด์ โกสิยพงษ์ไม่เพียงแต่เป็นนักร้องเท่านั้น เขายังเป็นนักแต่งเพลงที่มีพรสวรรค์อีกด้วย *baawy goo-sì-yá-phoong mâi phiiang dtàae bpen nák-ráawng thâo-nán khăo yang bpen nák-dtèng-phleeng tîi mii phaawn-sà-wăn ìik dûuai* "Boyd Kosiyabong is not only a singer but also a very talented song writer."

เพลงที่มีชื่อว่าฤดูร้อนเป็นหนึ่งในเพลงที่ฮิตมากที่สุดของวงพาราดอกซ์

phleeng tîi mii chûue wâa réu duu ráawn bpen phleeng tîi hit mâak tiîi sùt khăawng wong phaa-raa-dàwg

"The song 'Rue Duu Raawn' is one of Paradox's biggest hits."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Thongchai McIntyre

Thongchai McIntyre ranks as the most successful Asian entertainer in Entertainment Weekly Magazine

2. Bodyslam

Thai teen enjoy listening to the band Bodyslam.

3. Palmy

Palmy is one of the most successful singers in Thailand.

4. Boyd Kosiyabong

Boyd Kosiyabong is known in Thailand for his love songs.

5. Paradox

Paradox is an alternative band known for unique live performances.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Thai Vocabulary S1 #25 Writers

CONTENTS

2 Thai
2 English
2 Romanization
3 Vocabulary
3 Sample Sentences
4 Cultural Insight

#25

COPYRIGHT © 2012 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

THAI

1. นักเขียน 5 ท่าน ที่เป็นที่มีชื่อเสียงของประเทศไทย ได้แก่ใครบ้าง?

2. 1. วินทร์ เลียววาริณ

3. 2. ชาติ กอบจิตติ

4. 3. พลอย จริยเวช

5. 4. สราวุธ เฮ้งสวัสดิ์

6. 5. ทมยันตี

ENGLISH

1. Who are the five most popular writers in Thailand?

2. 1. Win Lyovarin

3. 2. Chart Korbjitti

4. 3. Ploy Chariyaves

5. 4. Sarawut Hengsawat

6. 5. Thommayanti

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. Who are the five most popular writers in Thailand?

2. 1. win liiaw-waa-rin

3. 2. châat gàawp-jìt-tì

4. 3. phlaawy jà-rí-yá-wâeht

5. 4. sà-raa-wút háeng-sà-wàt

6. 5. thá-má-yan-dtii

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English
วินทร์ เลียววาริณ	*win liiaw-waa-rin*	Win Lyovarin
ชาติ กอบจิตติ	*châat gàawp-jìt-tì*	Chart Korbjitti
พลอย จริยเวช	*phlaawy jà-rí-yá-wâeht*	Ploy Chariyaves
สราวุธ เฮ้งสวัสดิ์	*sà-raa-wút háeng-sà-wàt*	Sarawut Hengsawat
ทมยันตี	*thá-má-yan-dtii*	Thommayanti

SAMPLE SENTENCES

วินทร์ เลียววาริณ คือนักเขียนที่ได้รับรางวัลซีไรต์ถึง 2 ครั้ง *win liiaw-waa-rin khuue nák-khĭian tîi dâi-ráb raang-wan sii-rái thúeng săawng khráng* "Win Lyovarin is a two-time winner of the Southeast Asian Writers Award."	คำพิพากษาคือหนังสือที่มีชื่อเสียงมากที่สุดของชาติ กอบจิตติ *kham-phî-phâak-săa khuue năng-sŭue tîi mii chûue-sĭiang mâak thîi-sùt khăawng châat gàawp-jìt-tì* "'The Judgement' is the most well-known book by Chart Korbjitti."
พลอย จริยเวชมีชื่อเสียงในสไตล์การเขียนแบบบันเทิงแต่แฝงไปด้วยความรู้ของเธอ *phlaawy jà-rí-yá-wâeht mii chûue-sĭiang nai sà-dtai gaan khĭian bàap ban-thoeng dtàae făaeng bpai dûuai khwaam-rúu khăawng thuuhr* "Play Chariyaves is famous for her informative and entertaining writing style."	สราวุธ เฮ้งสวัสดิ์คือผู้แต่งหนังสือเรื่องโตเกียวไม่มีขา *sà-raa-wút háeng-sà-wàt khuue phûu-dtèng năng-sŭue rûueang dtoo-giiaw mâi mii kăa* "Sarawut Hengsawat is the author of 'Too-Kiiao-Mai-Mii-Khaa.'"

ทวิภพคือนิยายโรแนติกที่มีชื่อเสียงซึ่งเขียนโดยทมยันตี
tha-wi-phop khuue ní-yaai tîi mii chûue-sĭiang sûeng khĭian dooi thá-má-yan-dtii

"'Thawiphop' is the famous romantic novel written by Thommayanti."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Win Lyovarin

One of the most successful books written by Win Lyovarin is *The Creatures Called Humans.*

2. Chart Korbjitti

Chart Korbjitti usually focuses on social issues in his writing.

3. Ploy Chariyaves

Ploy Chariyaves is a writer, interpretor and translator; one of the most well-known books she has translated is *Bridget Jones's Diary*.

4. Sarawut Hengsawat

Sarawut Hengsawat wrote *Tokyo Doesn't Have Legs* which chronicles his experience travelling in Tokyo for nine days on a budget of only 12,000 Baht.

5. Thommayanti

Thommayanti is a both famous writer and legislator in Thailand.

ThaiPod101.com

ThaiPod101.com

LEARN THAI

The Master Guide to

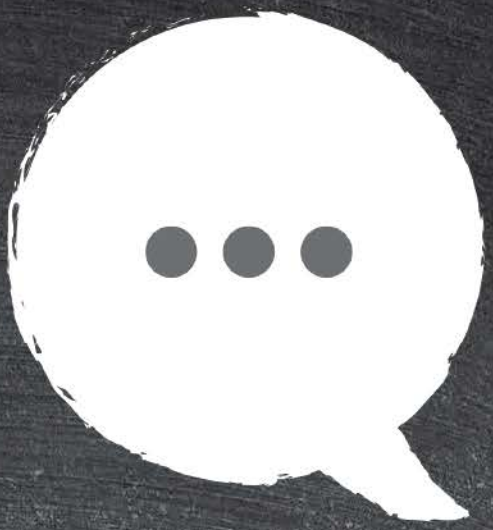
Thai Holidays

innovativeLANGUAGE.COM

innovativeLANGUAGE.COM

If you love the Thai language, then you'll love this!

Get our Complete Thai Learning Program at **ThaiPod101.com.**



- Speak Thai From Your First Lesson
- Access hundreds of Audio & Video Courses by Real Teachers
- Get FREE New Lessons Every Week
- Learn Anywhere, Anytime on Any Android Device or Computer

Go to
ThaiPod101.com
and sign up for your

FREE

Lifetime Account!

ThaiPod101.com

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Thailand S1 #1 New Year's Day

CONTENTS

2 Vocabulary
2 Sample Sentences

1

COPYRIGHT © 2016 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
การ์ดอวยพร	*gáat uuai phaawn*	greeting card	noun
วันปีใหม่	*wan bpii mài*	New Year's Day	proper noun
วัด	*wát*	temple	noun
คำอวยพร	*kham uuai phaawn*	blessing	noun
ของขวัญ	*khăawng-khwăn*	gift	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ฉันให้การ์ดอวยพรกับเพื่อนของฉัน
chăn hâi gàat uuai-phaawn gàp phûuen khăawng chăn

"I gave a greeting card to my friends."

วันปีใหม่ตรงกับวันที่หนึ่งมกราคมของทุกปี
wan bpii mài dtrong gàp wan thîi nùeng mók-gà-raa khom khăawng thúk bpii

"New Year's Day is on the 1st of January of every year."

ประเทศไทยมีวัดมากมาย
bprà-thêet thai mii wát mâak maai

"There are a lot of temples in Thailand."

ในวันสงกรานต์ เด็กๆ จะรดน้ำดำหัวผู้ใหญ่และรับคำอวยพรวันสงกรานต์
dèk dèk jà rót nám dam hŭua phûu yài láae ráp kham uuai phaawn wan sŏng-graan

"On Songkran day, children will pour water over the eldery's hand and receive their blessing."

ฉันเขียนคำอวยพรลงในการ์ดอวยพร
chăn khĭian kham uuai-phaawn long nai gàat uuai-phaawn

"I wrote a blessing in a greeting card."

เขาซื้อของขวัญราคาแพงไปให้แฟน
khăo súue khăawng-khwăn raa-khaa phaaeng bpai hâi faaen

"He bought an expensive gift for his girlfriend."

เด็กๆดีใจมากที่ได้ของขวัญ

dèk dèk dii-jai mâak thîi dâai khăawng-khwăn

"Children are happy to get gifts."

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Thailand S1 #2 Christmas

CONTENTS

2 Vocabulary
2 Sample Sentences

2

COPYRIGHT © 2016 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ต้นคริสต์มาส	*dtôn khrít-mâat*	Christmas tree	noun
งานเลี้ยงสังสรรค์	*ngaan líiang săng-săn*	party	noun
สัตว์	*sàt*	animal	noun
วันคริสต์มาส	*wan khrít-mâat*	Christmas	proper noun
ดนตรี	*don-dtrii*	music	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

เด็กๆช่วยกันตกแต่งต้นคริสต์มาส
dèk dèk chûuai gan dtòk-dtàeng dtôn krít-mâat

"Children help each other decorate the Christmas tree."

โรงเรียนจัดงานเลี้ยงสังสรรค์ให้นักเรียนในวันคริสต์มาส
roong-riian jàt ngaan líiang săng-săn hâi nák-riian nai wan krít-mâat

"The school held a party for students on Chirstmas."

สัตว์ที่ฉันชอบคือสุนัข
sàt thîi chăn châawp khuue sù-nák

"My favourite animal is a dog."

วันคริสต์มาสคือวันสำคัญของศาสนาคริสต์
wan krít-mâat khuue wan săm-khan khăawng sàat-sà-năa khrít

"Christmas is an important day for Chritianity."

พ่อชอบฟังดนตรีสากล
phâaw châawp fang don-dtrii săa-gon

"Dad loves to listen to international music."

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Thailand S1 #3 Songkran Festival Day

CONTENTS

2 Vocabulary
2 Sample Sentences

3

COPYRIGHT © 2016 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
เล่นน้ำสงกรานต์	*lên náam sŏng-graan*	water splashing	verb
หญิงสาว	*yĭng săao*	lady	noun
วันสงกรานต์	*wan sŏng-graan*	Songkran Festival Day	proper noun
บ้านเกิด	*bâan gòet*	hometown	noun
ครอบครัว	*khrâawp-khruua*	family	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

วัยรุ่นชอบออกไปเล่นน้ำสงกรานต์
wai-rûn châawp àawk bpai lên náam sŏng-graan

"Teenagers love to go out for water splashing."

มะลิเป็นหญิงสาวที่สวย
má-lí bpen yĭng săao thîi sŭuai

"Mali is a beautiful lady."

วันสงกรานต์อยู่ในเดือนเมษายน
wan sŏng-graan yùu nai duuean mee-săa-yon

"Songkran Festival Day is in April."

บ้านเกิดของฉันอยู่กรุงเทพ
bâan gòoet khăawng chăn yùu grung-thêep

"My hometown is Bangkok."

ครอบครัวของฉันมีขนาดใหญ่
khrâawp-khrua khăawng chăn mii khà-nàat yài

"My family is huge."

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Thailand S1 #4 Father's Day

CONTENTS

2 Vocabulary
2 Sample Sentences

4

COPYRIGHT © 2016 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ธง	*thong*	flag	noun
วันพ่อ	*wan phâaw*	Father's Day	proper noun
นายกรัฐมนตรี	*naa-yók rát-tà-mon-dtree*	prime minister	noun
พลุ	*plú*	fireworks	noun
ดอกพุทธรักษา	*dàawk phút-thá-rák-săa*	canna flower	proper noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ธงชาติไทยมีสามสี
thong châat thai mii săam-sĭi

"There are three colors on the Thai national flag."

ฉันบอกรักพ่อในวันพ่อ
chăn bàawk rák phâaw nai wan phâaw

"I told my dad that I love him on Father's Day."

นายกรัฐมนตรีเป็นผู้นำของประเทศ
naa-yók rát-thà-mon-dtrii bpen phûu-nam khăawng bprà-thêet

"The Prime Minister is the leader of the country."

ผู้คนชอบไปดูพลุในวันพ่อ
phûu khon châawp bpai duu plú nai wan phâaw

"On Father's Day, people love to watch fireworks."

ดอกพุทธรักษาคือดอกไม้ประจำวันพ่อ
dàawk phút-thá-rák-săa khuue dàawk-máai bprà-jam wan phâaw

"Canna flower is the symbolic flower of Father's Day."

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Thailand S1 #5 Loy Krathong Day

CONTENTS

2 Vocabulary
2 Sample Sentences

5

COPYRIGHT © 2016 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
วันลอยกระทง	*wan laauy grà-thong*	Loy Krathong Day	proper noun
พระจันทร์เต็มดวง	*prá jan dtem duang*	full moon	phrase
แม่น้ำ	*mâae-náam*	river	noun
กระทง	*grà-thong*	bowl	noun
เงิน	*ngoen*	money	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

วันลอยกระทงคือวันที่พระจันทร์เต็มดวง

wan laauy grà-thong khuue wan thîi phrá-jan dtem duuang

"Loy Krathong Day falls on the full moon night."

คืนที่พระจันทร์เต็มดวงจะเห็นพระจันทร์ชัดมาก

khuuen thîi phrá-jan dtem duuang jà hĕn phrá-jan chát mâak

"The moon is very clear on the full moon night."

แม่น้ำเจ้าพระยาอยู่ไม่ไกลจากบ้านฉัน

maâe náam jâao phrá yaa yùu mâi glai jàak bâan chăn

"Chao Phraya River is not far from my house."

เขาจะซื้อบ้านที่อยู่ติดแม่น้ำ

khăo jà súue bâan thîi yùu dtìt mâae-nám

"He will buy a house next to the river."

เราต้องช่วยกันรักษาความสะอาดของแม่น้ำ

rao dtâwng chûuai gan rák-săa khwaam sà-àat khăawng mâae-náam

"We must help maintain the cleanliness of the river."

กระทงทำจากใบตอง

grà-thong tham jàak bai dtaawng

"Loy Krathong's bowl is made from banana leaves."

ตอนนี้ฉันไม่มีเงิน

dtaawn-níi chăn mâi mii ngoen

"I don't have any money at the moment."

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Thailand S1 #6 Teacher's Day

CONTENTS

2 Vocabulary
2 Sample Sentences

6

COPYRIGHT © 2016 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
วันครู	*wan kruu*	Teacher's Day	proper noun
ครู	*khruu*	teacher	noun
นักเรียน	*nák-riian*	student	noun
อนาคต	*à-naa-khót*	future	noun
เรือจ้าง	*ruuea jâang*	taxi-boat	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ฉันกลับไปหาครูสมัยเด็กในวันครู
chăn glàp bpai hăa khruu sà-măi dèk nai wan khruu

"I went to see my old teacher on Teacher's Day."

ครูสอนภาษาไทยให้นักเรียน
khruu săawn phaa-săa thai hâi nák-riian

"A teaher teaches Thai language to students."

ครูของฉันเข้มงวดมาก
khruu khăawng chăn khêm-ngûuat mâak

"My teacher is very strict."

นักเรียนต้องขยันเรียน
nák-riian dtâwng khà-yăn riian

"Students have to study hard."

นักเรียนต้องมาโรงเรียนก่อนแปดโมงเช้า
nák-riian dtâwng maa roong-riian gàawn bpàaet moong cháao

"Students have to come to school before 8 am."

ถ้าอยากมีอนาคตที่ดี เธอต้องตั้งใจเรียน
thâa yàak mii a-naa-khót thîi dii thooe dtâwng dtâng-jai riian

"If you want to have a good future, you have to study hard."

ฉันนั่งเรือจ้างข้ามแม่น้ำเจ้าพระยา
chăn nâng ruuea jâang khâam mâae-náam jâao-phrá-yaa

"I take a taxi-boat to cross Chao-phraya River."

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Thailand S1 #7 National Children's Day

CONTENTS

2 Vocabulary
2 Sample Sentences

7

COPYRIGHT © 2016 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
วันเด็กแห่งชาติ	*wan dèk hàaeng châat*	National Children's Day	proper noun
คำขวัญ	*kham khwăn*	motto	noun
การแข่งขันตอบปัญหา	*gaan khàaeng-khăn dtàawp bpan-hăa*	quiz contest	noun
การแข่งขันกีฬา	*gaan khàaeng-khăn gii-laa*	sports event	noun
ชั่วโมงเรียน	*chûua-moong riian*	class	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

วันเด็กแห่งชาติเป็นวันที่เด็กๆรอคอย
wan dèk hàaeng châat bpen wan thîi dèk dèk raaw khaauy

"The National Children's Day is the day which children are anticipating for."

คำขวัญวันเด็กปีนี้ยาวมาก
kham khwăn wan dèk bpii níi yaao mâak

"This year's Childeren's Day's motto is very long."

น้องสาวของฉันเข้าร่วมการแข่งขันตอบปัญหา
náawng-săao khăawng chăn khâo rûuam gaan khàaeng-khăn dtàawp bpan-hăa

"My younger sister participates in a quiz contest."

การแข่งขันกีฬาทำให้คนสามัคคีกัน
gaan kaàeng-khăn gii-laa tham hâi khon săa-mák-khii gan

"Sport events help unite people together."

เด็กผู้ชายตื่นเต้นกับการแข่งขันกีฬา
dèk phûu-chaai dtùuen-dtên gàp gaan khàaeng-khăn gii-laa

"The boys are excited about the sport event."

นักเรียนกลับบ้านเมื่อจบชั่วโมงเรียน
nák-riian glàp bâan muuea jòp chûua-moong riian

"Students go home when the class ends."

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Thailand S1 #8 Visakha Bucha Day

CONTENTS

2 Vocabulary
2 Sample Sentences

8

COPYRIGHT © 2016 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ตระหนัก	*dtrà-nàk*	aware	verb
พระสงฆ์	*phrá sŏng*	monk	noun
วันวิสาขบูชา	*wan wí-săa-khà-buu-chaa*	Visakha Bucha Day	proper noun
ศาสนาพุทธ	*sàat-sà-năa phút*	Buddhism	proper noun
ความกตัญญู	*khwaam gà-dtan-yuu*	gratitude	noun
ความทุกข์	*kwaam thúk*	suffering	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

เราควรจะตระหนักถึงปัญหาสิ่งแวดล้อม
rao khuuan jà dtrà-nàk thŭeng bpan-hăa sìng-wâaet-láawm

"We should be aware of environment issues."

พระสงฆ์สวดมนต์ตอนเช้า
phrá-sŏng sùuat-mon dtaawn cháao

"Monks pray in the morning."

เพื่อนของฉันกำลังจะบวชเป็นพระสงฆ์
phûuean khăawng chăn gam-lang jà bùuat bpen phrá-sŏng

"My friend is going to be ordained as a monk."

วันวิสาขบูชาเป็นวันที่สำคัญที่สุดในพระพุทธศาสนา
wan wí-săa-khà-buu-chaa bpen wan thîi săm-khan thîi sùt nai phrá phút-thá-sàat-sà-năa

"Visakha Bucha Day is the most important day in Buddhism."

ศาสนาพุทธเป็นศาสนาประจำชาติไทย
sàat-sà-năa pút bpen sàat-sà-năa bprà-jam châat tai

"Buddhism is the main religion of Thailand."

เราทุกคนต้องมีความกตัญญูต่อพ่อแม่
rao thúk khon dtâwng mii khwaam gà-dtan-yuu dtàaw phâaw mâae

"We have to express graitude to our parents."

คนทุกคนต้องเคยมีความทุกข์

khon thúk khon dtâwng khooei mii khwaam thúk

"Suffering is experienced by every human being."

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Thailand S1 #9 Makha Bucha Day

CONTENTS

2 Vocabulary
2 Sample Sentences

9

COPYRIGHT © 2016 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
วันมาฆบูชา	*wan maa-khá-buu-chaa*	Makha Bucha Day	proper noun
พระอรหันต์	*phrá aaw-rá-hăn*	saint	noun
นิพพาน	*níp-phaan*	nirvana	noun
คำสอน	*kham săawn*	preaching	noun
พิธีกรรม	*phí-thii gam*	ceremony, rite	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ฉันไปวัดในวันมาฆบูชา
chăn bpai wát nai wan maa-khá-buu-chaa

"I went to a temple on Makha Bucha Day."

พระอรหันต์ 1,250 รูป มาประชุมกันโดยมิได้นัดหมาย
phrá aaw-rá-hăn nùeng-phan-săawng-ráauy-hâa-sìp rûup maa bprà-chum gan dooi mí dâai nát măai

"1,250 saints met spontaneously without prior scheduling."

นิพพานคือจุดมุ่งหมายสูงสุดของพุทธศาสนา
níp-phaan khuue jùt-mûng-măai sŭung sùt khăawng phút-thá-sàat-sà-năa

"Nirvana is the highest goal of the Buddhist path."

ชาวพุทธควรศึกษาคำสอนของพระพุทธเจ้า
chaao phút khuuan sùek-săa kham-săawn khăawng phrá-phút-thá-jâo

"Buddhists should study about Buddha's preaching."

พิธีกรรมทางพุทธศาสนามีหลายขั้นตอน
phí-thii gam thaang phút-thá-sàat-sà-năa mii lăai khân-dtaawn

"There are many procedures in Buddhist ceremonies."

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Thailand S1 #10 Buddhist Lent Day

CONTENTS

2 Vocabulary
2 Sample Sentences

10

COPYRIGHT © 2016 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
วันเข้าพรรษา	*wan khâo phan-săa*	Buddhist Lent Day	proper noun
ฤดูฝน	*reu-doo-fon*	rainy season	noun
การบวช	*gaan bùuat*	ordainment	noun
ขบวน	*khà-buuan*	parade	noun
เทียน	*Theīyn*	candle	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

วันเข้าพรรษาตรงกับช่วงฤดูฝน
wan khâo phan-săa dtrong gàp chûuang rúe-duu fŏn

"Buddhist Lent Day is in rainy season."

เทศกาลเข้าพรรษาอยู่ในช่วงฤดูฝน
thêet-sà-gaan khâo phan-săa yùu nai chûuang rùe-duu fŏn

The Rain's Retreat is during the rainy season.

ช่วงฤดูฝน เวลาออกไปข้างนอกอย่าลืมพกร่มไปด้วย
chûuang rúe-duu fŏn wee-laa àawk bpai khâang-nâawk yàa luuem phók rôm bpai dûuai

"During the rainy season, when you go out, don't forget to bring an umbrella with you."

การบวชถือเป็นการทดแทนพระคุณพ่อแม่วิธีหนึ่ง
gaan bùuat thuue bpen gaan thót-thaaen phrá-khun phaaw mâae wí-thii nùeng

"It is said that ordainment is another way to return parents debts of gratitude."

ในเมืองครึกครื้นเพราะมีขบวนแห่เทียนพรรษา
nai muueang khrúek-khrúuen phráw mii khà-buuan haàe thiian phan-săa

"The city is lively because of the Candle Festival parade."

บนเค้กมีเทียนปักอยู่ห้าเล่ม
bon khéek mii thiian bpàk yùu hâa lêm

"There are five candles on the cake."

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Thailand S1 #11 Labor Day

CONTENTS

2 Vocabulary
2 Sample Sentences

11

COPYRIGHT © 2016 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ค่าจ้างขั้นต่ำ	*khâa jâang khân dtàm*	minimum wage	noun
วันแรงงาน	*wan raaeng ngaan*	Labor Day	proper noun
พิธี	*phí-tii*	ceremony	noun
นายกรัฐมนตรี	*naa-yók rát-tà-mon-dtree*	prime minister	noun
คนงาน	*khon ngaan*	worker	noun
การแข่งขันกีฬา	*gaan khàaeng-khăn gii-laa*	sports event	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

คนงานได้รับค่าจ้างขั้นต่ำ
khon ngaan dâai ráp khâa-jâang khân dtàm

"Workers earn the minimum wage."

พ่อของฉันหยุดในวันแรงงาน
phâaw khăawng chăn yùt nai wan raaeng ngaan

"Dad has a day off on Labor Day."

พระราชพิธีฉัตรมงคลเริ่มตั้งแต่วันที่ 3 พฤษภาคม จนถึงวันที่ 5 พฤษภาคม
phrá râat-chá-phí-thii chàt-mong-khon rôoem dtáng-dtàae wan thîi săam phrúet-sà-paa-kom jon thŭeng wan thîi hâa phrúet-sà-paa-kom

"The coronation ceremony begins on the third of May to the fifth of May."

ฉันไปพิธีแต่งงานของเพื่อน
chăn bpai phí-thii dtàeng-ngaan khăawng phûuean

"I go to my friend's wedding ceremony."

นายกรัฐมนตรีเป็นผู้นำของประเทศ
naa-yók rát-thà-mon-dtrii bpen phûu-nam khăawng bprà-thêet

"The Prime Minister is the leader of the country."

คนงานทำงาน 8 ชม.ต่อวัน
khon ngaan tham ngaan bpàaet chûua-moong dtàaw wan

"Workers work 8 hours a day."

การแข่งขันกีฬาทำให้คนสามัคคีกัน *gaan kaàeng-khăn gii-laa tham hâi khon săa-mák-khii gan* "Sport events help unite people together."	เด็กผู้ชายตื่นเต้นกับการแข่งขันกีฬา *dèk phûu-chaai dtùuen-dtên gàp gaan khàaeng-khăn gii-laa* "The boys are excited about the sport event."

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Thailand S1 #12 End of Buddhist Lent day

CONTENTS

2 Vocabulary
2 Sample Sentences

12

COPYRIGHT © 2016 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
รถเข็น	*rót khĕn*	cart	noun
พระพุทธรูป	*phrá phút-thá-rûup*	Buddha statue	noun
ความเป็นสิริมงคล	*khwaam bpen-sì-rí-mong-khon*	luck	noun
วันออกพรรษา	*wan àawk phan-săa*	End of Buddhist Lent day	proper noun
ความผิดพลาด	*khwaam phìt phlâat*	mistakes	noun
พระสงฆ์	*phrá sŏng*	monk	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ในห้างมีรถเข็นให้ใช้
nai hâang mii rót khĕn hâi chái

"In a department store, there're carts."

พระพุทธรูปองค์นี้ใหญ่มาก
phrá phút-thá-rûup ong níi yài mâak

"This Buddha statue is huge."

บางคนทำบุญวันเกิดเพื่อความเป็นสิริมงคล
baang khon tham bun wan gòoet phûuea khwaam bpen-sì-rí-mong-khon

"Some people make a Birthday merit for good luck."

ฉันไปวัดในวันออกพรรษา
chăn bpai wát nai wan àawk phan-săa

"I go to a temple on the End of Buddhist Lent Day."

ความผิดพลาดคือบทเรียน
khwaam phìt-phlâat khuue bòt-rìian

"Every mistake is a lesson."

พระสงฆ์สวดมนต์ตอนเช้า
phrá-sŏng sùuat-mon dtaawn cháao

"Monks pray in the morning."

เพื่อนของฉันกำลังจะบวชเป็นพระสงฆ์
phûuean khăawng chăn gam-lang jà bùuat bpen phrá-sŏng

"My friend is going to be ordained as a monk."

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Thailand S1 #13 Asalha Bucha day

CONTENTS

2 Vocabulary
2 Sample Sentences

13

COPYRIGHT © 2016 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
แสตมป์	*sà-dtaem*	stamps	noun
บุพการี	*bùp-phá-gaa-rii*	parents	noun
วันอาสาฬหบูชา	*wan aa-san-hà-buu-chaa*	Asalha Bucha day	proper noun
โอวาท	*oo-wâat*	sermon	noun
นก	*nók*	bird	noun
ปลา	*bplaa*	fish	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

แสตมป์หายากมันจะราคาแพง
sà-dtaem hăa yâak man jà raa-khaa phaaeng

"Rare stamps tend to be expensive."

การดูแลบุพการีเป็นหน้าที่ของลูกทุกคน
gaan duu-laae bùp-phá-gaa-rii bpen nâa-thîi khăawng lûuk thúk khon

"Taking care of his/her own parents is every offspring's responsibility."

น้องชายของฉันบวชในวันอาสาฬหบูชา
náawng chaai khăawng chăn bùuat nai wan aa-săan-hà-buu-chaa

"My brother is ordained on Asalha Bucha Day."

ครูให้โอวาทแก่นักเรียน
khruu hâi oo-wâat gàae nák-riian

"A teacher gives a sermon to students."

สวนสาธารณะแห่งนี้มีนกเต็มไปหมด
sŭuan săa-thaa-ra-ná hàeng níi mii nók dtem bpai mòt

"There are many birds in this park."

นกอาศัยอยู่บนต้นไม้
nók aa-săi yùu bon dtôn-máai

"Birds live in the trees."

นกยี่สิบเอ็ดตัวกำลังเกาะอยู่บนต้นไม้

nók yîi-sìp-èt dtuua gam-lang gàw yùu bon dtôn-máai.

"Twenty-one birds are perching in the tree."

กินปลาแล้วจะฉลาด

gin bplaa láaeo jà chà-làat

"Eating fish will make you smart."

ปลาตัวนี้สดมาก

bplaa dtuaa níi sòt mâak.

"This fish is very fresh."

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Thailand S1 #14 Constitution Day

CONTENTS

2 Vocabulary
2 Sample Sentences

14

COPYRIGHT © 2017 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
วันรัฐธรรมนูญ	*wan rát-thà-tham-má-nuun*	Constitution Day	
ภาษี	*phaa-sĭi*	taxes	noun
ความเคารพ	*khwaam khao-róp*	homage	noun
กฎหมาย	*gòt-măai*	laws	noun
นายกรัฐมนตรี	*naa-yók rát-tà-mon-dtree*	prime minister	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

วันรัฐธรรมนูญ
เป็นวันสำคัญทางประวัติศาสตร์อีกวันหนึ่งของประเทศไทย
wan rát-thà-tham-má-nuun bpen wan săm-khan thaang bprà-wàt-sàat ïik wan nùeng khăawng bprà-thêet thai

"Constitution Day is a significant day in the history of Thailand."

ในวันรัฐธรรมนูญจะมีการตกแต่งบ้านเรือนด้วยธงชาติไทย พระบรมฉายาลักษณ์ และไฟประดับต่างๆ
nai wan rát-thà-tham-má-nuun jà mii gaan dtòk dtàaeng bâan ruuean dûuai thong châat thai phrá baaw-rom-mà-chăa-yaa-lák láe fai bprà-dàp dtàang dtàang

"In Constitution Day in Thailand, buidings are decorated with flags, portraits of the King, and also illuminations."

ประชาชนมีหน้าที่เสียภาษี
bprà-chaa-chon mii nâa-thîi sĭia phaa-sĭi

"Every citizen has a duty to pay taxes."

นักเรียนต้องมีความเคารพต่อครูบาอาจารย์
nák-riian dtâwng mii khwaam khao-róp dtàaw khruu-baa-aa-jaan

"Students should respect their own teachers."

คนไทยต้องเคารพต่อกฎหมาย *khon thai dtâwng khao-róp dtàaw gòt-măai* "Thai people need to obey the law."	นายกรัฐมนตรีเป็นผู้นำของประเทศ *naa-yók rát-thà-mon-dtrii bpen phûu-nam khăawng bprà-thêet* "The Prime Minister is the leader of the country."

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Thailand S1 #15 King Chulalongkorn Day

CONTENTS

2 Vocabulary
2 Sample Sentences

15

COPYRIGHT © 2017 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
วันปิยมหาราช	*wan bpì-yá-má-hăa-râat*	King Chulalongkorn Day	proper noun
ทาส	*thâat*	slave	noun
อิสระ	*ìt-sà-rà*	free	noun
ม้า	*máa*	horse	Noun
กษัตริย์	*gà-sàt*	king	noun
โทรศัพท์	*thoo-rá-sàp*	phone	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

วันปิยมหาราช
คือวันคล้ายวันสวรรคตของรัชกาลที่ 5
wan bpì-yá-má-hăa-râat khuue wan khláai wan sà-wăn-khót khăawng rát-chá-gaan thîi hâa

"Chulalongkorn Day is the memorial day of the passing away of King Chulalongkorn."

ทาสเป็นบุคคลที่ไม่มีอิสระในการดำรงชีวิต
thâat bpen bùk-khon thîi mâi mii ìt-sà-rà nai gaan dam-rong chii-wít

"A slave is a person without freedom to live."

ทุกคนมีอิสระในการใช้ชีวิต
thúk khon mii ìt-sà-rà nai gaan chái chii-wít

"Everyone is free to live the way they want."

ม้าตัวนั้นวิ่งเร็ว
máa dtuua nán wîng reo

"That horse is fast."

ฉันอยากจะลองขี่ม้าดูสักครั้ง
chăn yàak jà long kèe máa doo sàk kráng

"I want to try horse riding for once."

ม้ากำลังวิ่งอยู่ในทุ่ง
máa gam-lang wîng yùu-nai thûng

"The horse is running in the field."

กษัตริย์ของไทยในปัจจุบันคือ รัชกาลที่ 9

gà-sàt khăawng thai nai bpàt-jù-ban khuue rát-chá-gaan thîi gâao

"The current king of Thailand is King Rama 9."

ระบอบกษัตริย์ของประเทศไทยมีประวัติมายาวนานเกือบหนึ่งพันปีนับตั้งแต่กษัตริย์พ่อขุนศรีอินทราทิตย์

rá-baawp gà-sàt khăawng bprà-thêet thai mii bprà-wàt maa yaao naan gùueap nùeng phan bpii náp dtâng-dtàae gà-sàt phâaw-khŭn-sĭi-in-thá-raa-thít

"The monarchy of Thailand has a long history of almost a thousand years since King Indradit."

พระบาทสมเด็จพระเจ้าอยู่หัวภูมิพลอดุลยเดชเป็นประมุขของประเทศไทยในปัจจุบัน

phrá-bàat sŏm-dèt phrá-jâao-yùu-hŭua phuu-mí-phon à-dun-yá-dèet bpen bprà-múk khăawng bprà-thêet thai nai bpàt-jù-ban

"King Bhumibol Adulyadej is the current head of state of Thailand."

มีโทรศัพท์ไหม

mii thoo-rá-sàp mái

"Do you have a phone?"

เขาทำโทรศัพท์หายระหว่างทางกลับบ้าน

khăo tham thoo-rá-sàp hăai rá-wàang thaang glàp bâan

"He lost his phone on his way home."

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Thailand S1 #16 Coronation Day

CONTENTS

2 Vocabulary
2 Sample Sentences

16

COPYRIGHT © 2017 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
เพลงสรรเสริญพระบารมี	*phleeng săn-sŏoen phrá baa-rá-mii*	royal anthem	proper noun
วันฉัตรมงคล	*wan chàt-mong-khon*	Coronation Day	proper noun
รูปภาพ	*rûup-phâap*	picture	noun
รูปปั้น	*rûup-bpân*	statue	noun
ครู	*khruu*	teacher	noun
นักเรียน	*nák-riian*	student	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ในโรงหนังจะมีการเปิดเพลงสรรเสริญพระบารมีก่อนหนังฉาย
nai roong-năng jà mii gaan bpòoet phleeng săn-sŏoen phrá baa-rá-mii gàawn năng chăai

"The royal anthem is played before the beginning of each film in movie theatres."

วันฉัตรมงคลคือวันที่รัชกาลที่ 9 ขึ้นครองราชย์
wan chàt-mong-khon khuue wan thîi rát-chá-gaan thîi gâo khûen khraawng râat

"Thai Coronation day is the anniversary of coronation of the King Rama 9."

ในวันฉัตรมงคล คนไทยจะประดับธงชาติตามบ้านเรือน
nai wan chàt-mong-khon khon thai jà bprà-dàp thong châat dtaam bâan ruuean

"On Coronation Day, Thais will decorate their houses with national flags."

รูปภาพของช่างภาพคนนั้นสวยมาก
rûup phâap khăawng châang-phâap khon nán sŭuai mâak

"The pictures of that photographer are beautiful."

คู่สามีภรรยากำลังหัวเราะเยาะรูปภาพ
khûu săa-mii phan-rá-yaa gam-lang hŭua ráw-yáw rûup-phâap

"The couple is laughing at the picture."

มีรูปปั้นอยู่ในพระราชวัง
mii rûup bpân yùu nai phrá râat-chá-wang

"There is a statue in the palace."

ครูสอนภาษาไทยให้นักเรียน *khruu săawn phaa-săa thai hâi nák-riian* "A teaher teaches Thai language to students."	ครูของฉันเข้มงวดมาก *khruu khăawng chăn khêm-ngûuat mâak* "My teacher is very strict."
นักเรียนต้องขยันเรียน *nák-riian dtâwng khà-yăn riian* "Students have to study hard."	นักเรียนต้องมาโรงเรียนก่อนแปดโมงเช้า *nák-riian dtâwng maa roong-riian gàawn bpàaet moong cháao* "Students have to come to school before 8 am."

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Thailand S1 #17 Chakri Memorial Day

CONTENTS

2 Vocabulary
2 Sample Sentences

17

COPYRIGHT © 2017 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ราชวงศ์	*phrá râat-chá-wong*	royal family	noun
วันจักรี	*wan jàk-grii*	Chakri Memorial Day	proper noun
การสู้รบ	*gaan sûu-róp*	battle	noun
สงคราม	*song-khraam*	war	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ราชวงศ์ไทยเป็นราชวงศ์ที่รวยที่สุดในโลก

râat-chá-wong thai bpen râat-chá-wong thîi ruua thîi sùt nai lôok

"The Thai royal family is the richest royal family in the world."

วันจักรีตรงกับวันที่ 6 เมษายนของทุกปี

wan jàk-grii dtrong gàp wan thîi hòk mee-săa-yon khăawng thúk bpii

"The Chakri memorial day is on the sixth of April of every year."

วันจักรีเป็นวันครบรอบการก่อตั้งราชวงจักรี

wan jàk-grii bpen wan khróp râawp gaan gàaw dtâng râat-cha-wong jàk-grii

"Chakri Memorial Day is the anniversary of the coronation of the Chakri dynasty."

การสู้รบสามารถก่อให้เกิดสงครามได้

gaan sûu-róp săa-mâat gàaw hâi gòoet sŏng-khraam dâai

"A battle can lead to a war."

ยายของฉันหนีมาจากจีนเพราะสงคราม

yaai khăawng chăn nĭi maa jàak jiin phráw sŏng-khraam

"My grandmother fled from China because of the war."

ดิฉันเชื่อว่าไม่มีใครชอบสงคราม

"I believe no one likes war."

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Thailand S1 #18 Chinese Lunar New Year's Day

CONTENTS

2 Vocabulary
2 Sample Sentences

18

COPYRIGHT © 2017 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
วันตรุษจีน	*wan dtrùt-jiin*	Chinese Lunar New Year's Day	proper noun
แต๊ะเอีย	*dtáe-iia*	red envelopes	noun
อาหาร	*aa-hăan*	food	noun
กระดาษ	*grà-dàat*	paper	noun
สีแดง	*sĭi-daaeng*	red	adjective, noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

วันตรุษจีนจะอยู่ในเดือนกุมภาพันธ์เป็นส่วนใหญ่
wan dtrùt jiin jà yùu nai duuean gum-phaa-phan bpen sùuan yài

"Lunar New Year normally takes place in February."

วันตรุษจีนเป็นวันสำคัญของคนจีน
wan dtrùt-jiin bpen wan săm-khan khăawng khon jiin

"Chinese Lunar New Year is an important day of Chinese people."

เด็กๆได้แต๊ะเอียในวันตรุษจีน
dèk dèk dâai dtáe-iia nai wan dtrùt-jiin

"Kids receive a red envelope on Chinese New Year."

ฉันกินอาหารเผ็ดไม่ได้
chăn gin aa-hăan phèt mâi dâai

"I can't eat spicy food."

เด็กๆ ต้องทานอาหารทุกมื้อ
dèk-dèk dtâwng thaan aa-hăan thúk múue

"Children must have food at every meal."

ช่วยเขียนชื่อลงบนกระดาษด้วยค่ะ
chûuai khĭian chûue long bon grà-dàat dûuai khâ

"Please write your name on paper."

ฉันไม่มีกระดาษเลยสักแผ่น
chăn mâi mii grà-dàat looei sàk phàen

"I don't have any paper."

ผู้หญิงชอบทาลิปสีแดง
phûu-yĭng châawp thaa líp sĭi daaeng

"Women love to wear red lipstick."

ในกรณีฉุกเฉินให้กดปุ่มสีแดง *nai gà-rá-nii chùk-chŏoen hâi gòt bpùm sĭi-daaeng* "In case of emergency, press the red button."	แก้มของเด็กเป็นสีแดง *gâaem khăawng dèk bpen sĭi-daaeng* "The child's cheeks are red."

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Thailand S1 #19 Vegetarian Festival

CONTENTS

2 Vocabulary
2 Sample Sentences

19

COPYRIGHT © 2017 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ผัก	*phàk*	vegetables	noun
อาหารเจ	*aa-hăan jee*	vegan food	noun
เทศกาลกินเจ	*thêet-sà-gaan gin jee*	Vegetarian Festival	proper noun
สุขภาพ	*sùk-khà-phâap*	health	noun
เนื้อสัตว์	*núuea-sàt*	meat	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

แม่สอนให้ฉันกินผักมาตั้งแต่เด็ก
mâae săawn hâi chăn gin phàk maa dtâng-dtàae dèk

"My mom taught me to eat vegetables since I was young."

อาหารเจมีราคาแพง
aa-hăan jee mii raa-khaa phaaeng

"Vegan food is expensive."

ร้านค้าขายอาหารเจในช่วงเทศกาลกินเจ
ráan-kháa khăai aa-hăan jee nai chûuang thêet-sà-gaan gin jee

"Food stores sell Vegan food during Vegetarian festival."

สุขภาพเป็นสิ่งที่สำคัญ
sùk-khà-phâap bpen sìng thîi săm-khan

"Health is an important thing."

ประกันสุขภาพฉบับใหม่นี้จะทำเอาฉันหมดตัว
bprà-gan sùk-khà-phâap chà-bàp mài níi jà tham ao chăn mòt dtuua

"This new health insurance is ripping me off."

ควรดื่มน้ำวันละหกแก้วเพื่อสุขภาพ
khuuan dùuem náam wan lá hòk gâaeo pûuea sùk-khà-phâap

"You should drink six glasses of water per day for your health."

เนื้อสัตว์มีโปรตีน *núuea sàt mii bproo-dtiin* "Meat contains Protein."	ดิฉันไม่ทานเนื้อสัตว์เพราะดิฉันเป็นมังสวิรัติ *dì-chăn mâi thaan núuea-sàt phráw dì-chăn bpen mang-sà-wí-rát* "I don't eat meat because I'm a vegetarian."

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Thailand S1 #20 Royal Ploughing Ceremony

CONTENTS

2 Vocabulary
2 Sample Sentences

20

COPYRIGHT © 2017 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
วันพืชมงคล	*wan phûuet-mong-khon*	Royal Ploughing Ceremony	proper noun
พืช	*phûuet*	plant	noun
เมล็ดพืช	*má-lét-phûuet*	seed	noun
การเพาะปลูก	*gaan pháw bplùuk*	crop	noun
วัว	*wuua*	cow	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

วันพืชมงคลจัดขึ้นก่อนฤดูฝนจะมา *wan phûuet-mong-khon jàt khûen gàawn rúe-duu fŏn jà maa* "Royal Ploughing Day is held before the annual rains typically arrive."	ข้าวเป็นพืชที่สำคัญของไทย *khâao bpen phûuet thîi săm-khan khăawng thai* "Rice is an important plant of Thailand."
ประชาชนได้รับเมล็ดข้าวในวันพืชมงคล *bprà-chaa-chon dâai ráp má-lét khâao nai wan phûuet-mong-khon* "People receive rice seeds on Royal Ploughing Day."	ถ้าฝนตก การเพาะปลูกก็จะดี *thâa fŏn dtòk gaan pháw-bplùuk gâaw jà dii* "If it rains, the crop will be good."
ชาวนารีดนมวัวทุกวัน *chaao-naa rîit nom wuua thúk wan* "farmers milk their cows everyday."	วัวกำลังแทะเล็มหญ้าอยู่ในทุ่ง *wuua gam-lang tháe-lem yâa yùu nai thûng* "The cows are grazing in the field."

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Thailand S1 #21 Sunthorn Phu Day

CONTENTS

2 Vocabulary
2 Sample Sentences

21

COPYRIGHT © 2017 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
วันสุนทรภู่	*wan sŭn-thaawn phûu*	Sunthorn Phu Day	proper noun, noun
บทกวี	*bòt gà-wii*	poem	noun
กวี	*gà-wii*	poet	noun
หนังสือการ์ตูน	*năng-sŭue gaa-dtuun*	comic book	noun
ภาพยนตร์	*phâap-phá-yon*	movie	noun
วรรณกรรม	*wan-ná-gam*	literature	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ฉันเขียนเรียงความในวันสุนทรภู่
chăn khĭian riang khwaam nai wan sŭn-thaawn phûu

"I write an essay on Sunthorn Phu Day."

บทกวีนี้ถูกนำไปแปลเป็นภาษาอังกฤษ
bòt gà-wii níi thùuk nam bpai bplaae bpen phaa-săa ang-grìt

"This poem is being translated into English."

สุนทรภู่เป็นกวีที่มีชื่อเสียง
sŭn-thaawn phûu bpen gà-wii thîi mii chûue-sĭiang

"Sunthorn Phu is a famous poet."

น้องชายของฉันชอบอ่านการ์ตูนมาก
náawng chaai khăawng chăn châawp àan gaa-dtuun mâak

"My brother loves to read comic books."

ฉันไม่ชอบภาพยนตร์สยองขวัญ
chăn mâi châawp phâap-phá-yon sà-yăawng khwăn

"I don't like horror movies."

ฉันไม่ชอบภาพยนตร์สยองขวัญ
chăn mâi châawp phâap-phá-yon sà-yăawng khwăn

"I don't like horror movies."

วรรณกรรมเรื่องนี้ถูกนำไปสร้างเป็นภาพยนตร์

wan-ná-gam rûueang níi thùuk nam bpai sâang bpen phâap-phá-yon

"This literature is being remade into a movie."

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Thailand S1 #22 National Thai Language Day

CONTENTS

2 Vocabulary
2 Sample Sentences

22

COPYRIGHT © 2017 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ประโยค	*bprà-yòok*	sentence	noun
การออกเสียง	*gaan àawk sĭiang*	pronunciation	noun
คำสแลง	*kham sà-laaeng*	slang	noun
วันภาษาไทยแห่งชาติ	*wan phaa-săa thai hàaeng châat*	National Thai Language Day	proper noun, noun
ภาษาไทย	*phaa-săa-thai*	Thai language	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ครูให้นักเรียนแต่งประโยคมาคนละหนึ่งประโยค

khruu hâi nák-riian dtàeng bprà-yòok maa khon lá nùeng bprà-yòok

"The teacher asks each student to make a sentence."

เวลาพูดควรออกเสียงให้ชัดเจน

wee-laa phûut khuuan àawk sĭiang hâi chát-jeen

"When you speak, you should have clear pronunciation."

บนอินเตอร์เน็ตมีคำสแลงใหม่ๆอยู่ตลอดเวลา

bon in-dtooe-net mii kham sà-laaeng mài mài yùu dtà-làawt wee-laa

"On the Internet, there is always new slang coming out."

โรงเรียนจัดกิจกรรมเกี่ยวกับภาษาไทยในวันภาษาไทย

roong-riian jàt gìt-jà-gam gìiao-gàp phaa-săa thai nai wan phaa-săa thai

"The school organizes a Thai language activity on the National Thai Language Day."

ภาษาไทยเป็นภาษาราชการของคนไทย

phaa-săa thai bpen phaa-săa râat-chá-gaan khăawng khon thai

"Thai language is an official language of Thai people."

เวลาเรียนภาษาไทย ต้องฝึกเขียนซ้ำๆ

wee-laa riian phaa-săa-thai dtâwng fùek khĭian sám-sám

"When you study Thai, you must practice writing repeatedly."

อันนี้ภาษาไทยเรียกว่าอะไร *an-níi phaa-săa-thai rîiak wâa à-rai.* "What is this called in Thai?"	Radio ภาษาไทยเรียกว่าวิทยุ *“Radio” phaa-săa-thai rîiak wâa “wít-thá-yú”.* "In Thai, radio is called wi-tha-yu."

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Thailand S1 #23 Rocket Festival

CONTENTS

2 Vocabulary
2 Sample Sentences

23

COPYRIGHT © 2017 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ประเพณีบุญบั้งไฟ	*bprà-phee-nii bun bâng fai*	Rocket Festival	proper noun, noun
เทวดา	*thee-wá-daa*	angel, god	noun
ฝน	*fŏn*	rain	noun
บั้งไฟ	*bâng fai*	fireball	noun
เพลง	*phleeng*	song	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ประเพณีบุญบั้งไฟ
เป็นประเพณีหนึ่งของภาคอีสานของไทย
bprà-phee-nii bun bâng fai bpen bprà-phee-nii nùeng khăawng phâak ii-săan khăawng thai

"Rocket Festival is a festival from the Northeastern part of Thailand."

เทวดาอยู่บนฟ้า
thee-wá-daa yùu bon fáa

"Angels are up in the sky."

เวลาฝนตกหนัก ฉันออกไปข้างนอกไม่ได้
wee-laa fŏn dtòk nàk chăn àwk bpai khâang-nâawk mâi dâai

"When it rains, I can't go out."

เวลาฝนตก รถจะติด
Wee-laa fŏn-dtòk rót jà dtìt.

"When it rains, the traffic will get really bad."

เมื่อวานมีฝนตกหนักอยู่แป๊บนึง
mûuea-waan mii fŏn dtòk nàk yùu bpáaep-nueng

"Yesterday it rained heavily for a short while."

ฝนกำลังตกลงบนถนน
fŏn gam-lang dtòk long bon thà-nŏn

"The rain is falling on the street."

ผู้ชายช่วยกันทำบั้งไฟ
phûu-chaai chûua gan tham bâng fai

"Men help each other make a fireball."

เพลงนั้นชื่ออะไร
phleeng nán chûue à-rai?

"What is the name of that song?"

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Thailand S1 #24 Phi Ta Khon Festival

CONTENTS

2 Vocabulary
2 Sample Sentences

#24

COPYRIGHT © 2017 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
ประเพณีผีตาโขน	*bprà-phee-nii phĭi dtaa khŏon*	Phi Ta Khon Festival	proper noun
วิญญาณ	*win-yaan*	spirits	noun
เต้นรำ	*dtên ram*	dance	noun
บรรพบุรุษ	*ban-phá-bù-rùt*	ancestors	noun
เครื่องแต่งกาย	*khrûueang dtàeng gaai*	costume, clothes	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ประเพณีผีตาโขนจัดขึ้นในเดือนกรกฎาคม
"
bprà-phee-nii phĭi dtaa khŏon jàt khûen nai duuean gà-rá-gà-daa-khom"

"Phi Ta Khon Festival is held in July."

คนไทยเชื่อในเรื่องวิญญาณ
khon thai chûuea nai rûueang win-yaan

"Thais belive in spirits."

คนหนุ่มสาวชอบเต้นรำ
khon nùm săao châawp dtên ram

"Young people like to dance."

บรรพบุรุษของฉันมาจากประเทศจีน
ban-phá-bù-rùt khăawng chăn maa jàak bprà-thêet jiin

"My ancestors came from China."

เครื่องแต่งกายประจำชาติทุกชาติมีเอกลักษณ์เป็นของตัวเอง
khrûueang dtàeng gaai bprà-jam châat thúk châat mii èek-gà-lák bpen khăawng dtuua eeng

"Every national costume is unique in itself."

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Thailand S1 #25 Valentine's Day

CONTENTS

2 Vocabulary
2 Sample Sentences

25

COPYRIGHT © 2017 INNOVATIVE LANGUAGE LEARNING. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

VOCABULARY

Thai	Romanization	English	Class
งานแต่งงาน	*ngaan dtàeng-ngaan*	wedding	noun
วันวาเลนไทน์	*wan waa-len-thaai*	Valentine's Day	proper noun, noun
ร้านอาหาร	*ráan aa-hăan*	restaurant	noun
ภาพยนตร์	*phâap-phá-yon*	movie	noun
ของขวัญ	*khăawng-khwăn*	gift	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

มีแขกมาร่วมงานแต่งงานประมาณ 200 คน
mii khàaek maa rûuam ngaan dtàeng-ngaan bprà-maan săawng ráuy khon

"There are around 200 guests, attending the wedding."

ฉันได้ดอกกุหลาบในวันวาเลนไทน์
chăn dâai dàawk gù-làap nai wan waa-leen-thaai

"I got a rose on Valentine's Day."

ในห้างมีแต่ร้านอาหารญี่ปุ่น
nai hâang mii dtàae ráan aa-hăan yîi-bpùn

"There are only japanese restaurants in the department store."

ร้านอาหารโปรดของฉันคือร้านเอ็มเค
ráan aa-hăan bpròot khăawng chăn khuue ráan em-khee

"My favorite restaurant is MK."

บรรยากาศของร้านอาหารดึงดูดลูกค้าได้หลายคนในระยะหลัง
ban-yaa-gàat khăawng ráan-aa-hăan dueng-dùut lûuk-kháa dâi lăai khon nai rá-yá lăng

"The atmosphere of the restaurant has drawn a lot of customers lately."

นั่นคือร้านอาหารของเพื่อนของดิฉัน
nân khuue ráan-aa-hăan khăawng phûuean khăawng chăn

"That's my friend's restaurant."

ฉันไม่ชอบภาพยนตร์สยองขวัญ *chăn mâi châawp phâap-phá-yon sà-yăawng khwăn* "I don't like horror movies."	ฉันไม่ชอบภาพยนตร์สยองขวัญ *chăn mâi châawp phâap-phá-yon sà-yăawng khwăn* "I don't like horror movies."
เขาซื้อของขวัญราคาแพงไปให้แฟน *khăo súue khăawng-khwăn raa-khaa phaaeng bpai hâi faaen* "He bought an expensive gift for his girlfriend."	เด็กๆดีใจมากที่ได้ของขวัญ *dèk dèk dii-jai mâak thîi dâai khăawng-khwăn* "Children are happy to get gifts."